

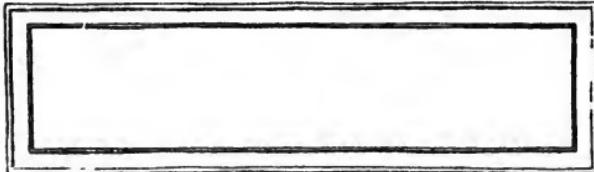
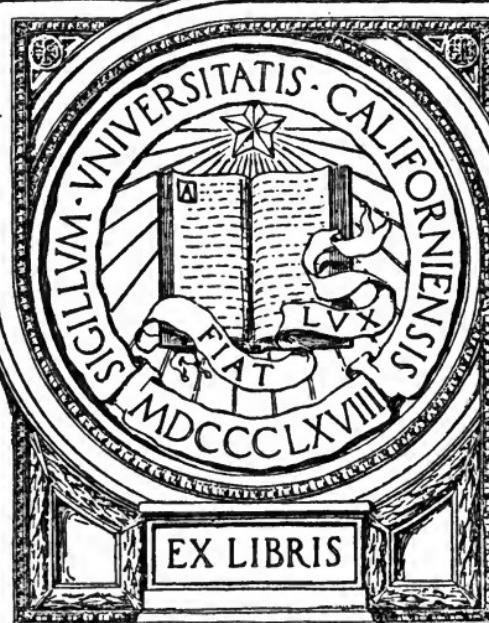
UC-NRLF



\$B 278 797

YB 17296

IN MEMORIAM  
FLORIAN CAJORI



*Florian Cajori*  
THE ONTARIO

# HIGH SCHOOL GEOMETRY

*THEORETICAL*



BY

A. H. McDougall, B.A.

PRINCIPAL OTTAWA COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE

---

Authorized by the Minister of Education for Ontario

---

TORONTO  
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED

**Copyright, Canada, 1910, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,  
Toronto, Ontario.**

**FIRST EDITION, 1910.**

**REPRINTED, 1911, 1912, 1913, 1914.**

QA453  
M3

## PREFACE

---

The Ontario High School Geometry is intended to cover the course in Theoretical Geometry, begun in the Lower School and completed in the Middle School, as defined in the Programme of Studies for High Schools and Collegiate Institutes of the Province of Ontario.

In deference to the wish of the teachers of mathematics of the Province, this Geometry is divided into Books with numbered propositions.

While the theoretical course is complete in itself, it is assumed that its study has been preceded by the usual course in drawing and measurement. A considerable number of practical problems are given in the exercises. These should be worked out carefully, and, in fact, all diagrams should be accurately and neatly made.

The book contains an abundant supply of carefully selected and graded exercises. Those given in sets throughout the Books will be found suitable for the work of average classes, and just about sufficient in number to fix the subject-matter of the propositions in the minds of the pupils. All the problems contained in the miscellaneous collections at the ends of the Books could be worked through by a few of the best pupils only, and should be used also by the teachers as a store from which to draw suitable material for review purposes from time to time.

While the requirements of class-work have been constantly kept in mind in the choice of proofs, it should not be assumed that other proofs, just as good, cannot in many cases be given.

Students should be constantly encouraged to work out methods of their own, and to keep records of the best in their note books.

Symmetry has been used to an unusual extent in giving a more concise form to the proofs of constructions.

The treatment of parallels, in accord with the method of many of the best English text-books, is based on Playfair's Axiom.

Tangents are treated both by the method of limits and as lines which meet the circle in only one point.

Areas of triangles and parallelograms are compared with rectangles, thereby not only giving a simple method of treatment, but also promoting facility in numerical computations.

Similarly, the treatment of proportion is correlated with the algebraic knowledge of the pupil.

OTTAWA, June, 1910.

---

## SYMBOLS AND ABBREVIATIONS

---

The following symbols and abbreviations are used :—

**Fig.** Figure.

**Const.** Construction.

**Hyp.** Hypothesis.

**Cor.** Corollary.

*e.g.* *exempli gratia*, for example.

*i.e.* *id est*, that is.

**p.** page.

**∴** because, since.

**∴** therefore.

**rt.** right.

**st.** straight.

**∠, ∠s, ∠d** angle, angles, angled.

**△, △s** triangle, triangles.

**||, ||s** parallel, parallels.

**||gm, ||gms** parallelogram, parallelograms.

**sq., sqs.** square, squares.

**AB<sup>2</sup>** the square on AB.

**rect.** rectangle.

**AB.CD** the rectangle contained by AB and CD.

**AB : CD, or**  $\frac{AB}{CD}$  the ratio of AB to CD.

**+** plus, together with.

**-** minus, diminished by.

**⊥** is perpendicular to, a perpendicular.

**=** is equal to, equals.

**>** is greater than.

**<** is less than.

**≡** is congruent to, congruent.

**|||** is similar to, similar.

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

## CONTENTS

---

### BOOK I

	<small>PAGE</small>
PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS AND EXPLANATIONS . . . . .	1
GEOMETRICAL REASONING . . . . .	3
ANGLES AND TRIANGLES . . . . .	8
FIRST CASE OF THE CONGRUENCE OF TRIANGLES . . . . .	16
SECOND CASE OF THE CONGRUENCE OF TRIANGLES . . . . .	22
CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	25
PARALLEL STRAIGHT LINES . . . . .	35
TRIANGLES . . . . .	45
THIRD CASE OF THE CONGRUENCE OF TRIANGLES . . . . .	54
THE AMBIGUOUS CASE IN THE COMPARISON OF TRIANGLES . . . . .	56
INEQUALITIES . . . . .	59
PARALLELOGRAMS . . . . .	66
CONSTRUCTION . . . . .	74
LOCI . . . . .	75
MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES . . . . .	83

### BOOK II

AREAS OF PARALLELOGRAMS AND TRIANGLES . . . . .	93
CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	110
AREAS OF SQUARES . . . . .	116
MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES . . . . .	134

Book III	PAGE
THE CIRCLE . . . . .	141
CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	143
ANGLES IN A CIRCLE . . . . .	152
TANGENTS AND CHORDS . . . . .	169
CONSTRUCTION . . . . .	173
ANGLE BETWEEN CHORD AND TANGENT . . . . .	177
CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	182
CONTACT OF CIRCLES . . . . .	196
MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES . . . . .	200
 Book IV . . . . .	
RATIO AND PROPORTION . . . . .	213
CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	226
BISECTOR THEOREMS . . . . .	230
SIMILAR TRIANGLES . . . . .	236
GEOMETRIC MEANS . . . . .	244
RECTANGLES . . . . .	247
PROOF OF PYTHAGOREAN THEOREM BY PROPORTION . . . . .	249
CHORDS AND TANGENTS . . . . .	252
MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES . . . . .	258
 Book V . . . . .	
AREAS OF SIMILAR FIGURES . . . . .	271
CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	274
AREAS OF SIMILAR POLYGONS . . . . .	278
CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	280
ARCS AND ANGLES . . . . .	284
ANALYSIS OF A PROBLEM—COMMON TANGENTS . . . . .	285
MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES . . . . .	289
INDEX . . . . .	299

# THEORETICAL GEOMETRY

---

## BOOK I

### PRELIMINARY DEFINITIONS AND EXPLANATIONS

**1. A point** is that which has position but no size.

The position of a point on the blackboard, or on paper, is represented by a mark. This mark has some small size and therefore only roughly represents the idea of a point.

**2. A line** is that which has length but neither breadth nor thickness.

Again, the mark that we use to represent a line has breadth and some small thickness, and consequently, only roughly represents the idea.

The intersection of two lines is a point.

**3. Lines** may be either straight or curved.

The following property distinguishes straight lines from curved lines and may be used as the definition of a straight line:—

**Two straight lines cannot have any two points of one coincide with two points of the other without the lines coinciding altogether.**

This is sometimes stated as follows:—Joining two points there is always one and only one straight line.

It follows from this definition that **two straight lines cannot enclose a space.**

Can the circumferences of two equal circles coincide in two points without coinciding altogether?

4. A **surface** is that which has length and breadth but no thickness.

A sheet of tissue paper has length and breadth and very little thickness. It thus roughly represents the idea of a surface. In fact the sheet of paper has two well-defined surfaces separated by the substance of the paper..

The boundary between two parts of space is a surface.

5. Surfaces may be either plane or curved.

The following property distinguishes plane surfaces from curved surfaces and may be used as the definition of a plane surface:—

**The straight line joining any two points on a plane surface lies wholly on that surface.**

Give examples of curved surfaces on which straight lines may be drawn in certain directions. Notice the force of the word "any" in the definition above.

6. A **solid** is that which has length, breadth and thickness.

7. Any combination of points, lines, surfaces and solids is called a **figure**.

8. **Geometry** is the science which investigates the properties of figures and the relations of figures to one another.

9. In **Plane Geometry** the figure, or figures, considered in each proposition are confined to one plane, while **Solid Geometry** treats of figures the parts of which are not all in the same plane.

Plane Geometry is also called Geometry of Two Dimensions (length and breadth), and Solid Geometry is called Geometry of Three Dimensions (length, breadth and thickness).

---

### GEOMETRICAL REASONING

10. Two general methods of investigating the properties or relations of figures may be distinguished as the Practical Method and the Theoretical Method.

Some properties may be tested by measurement, paper-folding, etc., while in the same or other cases it may be shown that the property follows as a necessary result from others that are already known to be true.

The Theoretical Method, has certain advantages over the Practical method. Measurements, etc., are never exact, and in many cases cannot be made directly; but in the Theoretical Method, starting from certain simple statements, called **axioms**, the truth of which is self-evident, or, it may be in some cases, assumed, the consequent statements follow with absolute certainty.

The Practical Method is also known as the Inductive Method of Reasoning, and the Theoretical Method as the Deductive Method.

11. Figures may be compared by making a tracing of one of them and fitting the tracing on the other. In many cases the process may be made a mental operation and the comparison made with absolute certainty by means of the following axiom:—

**A figure may be, actually or mentally, transferred from one position to another without change of form or size.**

When two figures are shown to be exactly equal in all respects by supposing one to be made to fit exactly on the other, the proof is said to be by the **method of superposition**.

Figures which exactly fill the same space are said to **coincide** with each other.

12. In general a **proposition** is that which is stated or affirmed for discussion.

In mathematics a **proposition** is a statement of either a truth to be demonstrated or of an operation to be performed. It is called a **theorem** when it is something to be proved, and a **problem** when it is a construction to be made.

Example of Theorem:—If two straight lines cut each other, the vertically opposite angles are equal.

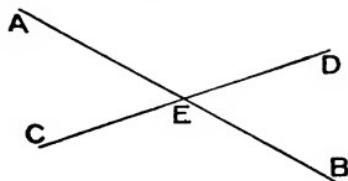
Example of Problem:—It is required to bisect a given straight line.

13. Theorems are commonly stated in two ways:—First, the **General Enunciation**, in which the property is stated as true for all figures of a class, but without naming any particular figure, as in the first example given in § 12; second, the **Particular Enunciation**, in which the theorem is stated to be true of the particular figure in a certain diagram.

Similarly general and particular enunciations are commonly given for problems.

Examples of Particular Enunciation :—

1. Let **AB** and **CD** be two st. lines cutting at **E**.



It is required to show that  $\angle AEC = \angle BED$ , and that  $\angle AED = \angle BEC$ .

2. Let **AB** be a given st. line.



It is required to bisect **AB**.

14. In general, the enunciation of a theorem consists of two parts: the hypothesis and the conclusion.

The **hypothesis** is the formal statement of the conditions that are supposed to exist, *e.g.*, in the first example of § 12, "If two straight lines cut each other."

The **conclusion** is that which is asserted to follow necessarily from the hypothesis, *e.g.*, "the vertically opposite angles are equal to each other."

Commonly, the hypothesis of a theorem is stated first, introduced by the word "if," and the two parts hypothesis and conclusion are separated by a comma. Sometimes, however, the two parts are not so formally

distinguished, *e.g.*, in the proposition:—The angles at the base of an isosceles triangle are equal to each other. In order to show the two parts, this statement may be changed as follows:—If a triangle has two sides equal to each other, the angles opposite these equal sides (or angles at the base) are equal to each other.

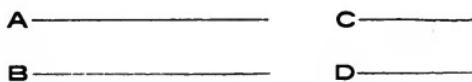
15. The demonstration of a theorem depends either on definitions and axioms, or on other theorems that have been previously shown to be true.

The following are some of the axioms commonly used in geometrical reasoning:—

1. Things that are equal to the same thing are equal to each other.

If  $A = B$ ,  $B = C$ ,  $C = D$ ,  $D = E$  and  $E = F$ , what about  $A$  and  $F$ ?

2. If equals be added to equals the sums are equal.



Thus if  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  be four st. lines such that  $A = B$  and  $C = D$ , then the sum of  $A$  and  $C$  = the sum of  $B$  and  $D$ .

*Exercise*:—Mark four successive points  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$  on a st. line such that  $AB = CD$ . Show that  $AC = BD$ .

3. If equals be taken from equals the remainders are equal.

Give example.

*Exercise :—*Mark four successive points A, B, C, D on a st. line such that  $AC = BD$ . Show that  $AB = CD$ .

4. If equals be added to unequals the sums are unequal, the greater sum being obtained from the greater unequal.

Give example. Show also, by example, that if unequals be added to unequals the sums may be either equal or unequal.

5. If equals be taken from unequals the remainders are unequal, the greater remainder being obtained from the greater unequal.

6. Doubles of the same thing, or of equal things, are equal to each other.

7. Halves of the same thing, or of equal things, are equal to each other.

8. The whole is greater than its part, and equal to the sum of all its parts.

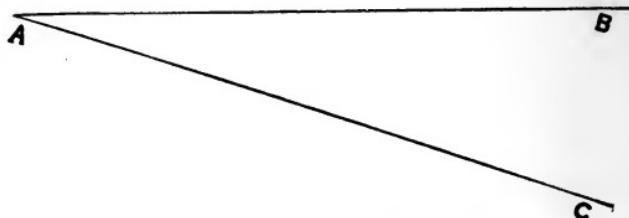
Give examples.

9. Magnitudes that coincide with each other, are equal to each other.

These simple propositions, and others that are also plainly true, may be freely used in proving theorems.

## ANGLES AND TRIANGLES

16. **Definitions.** — When two straight lines are drawn from a point they are said to form an **angle**.



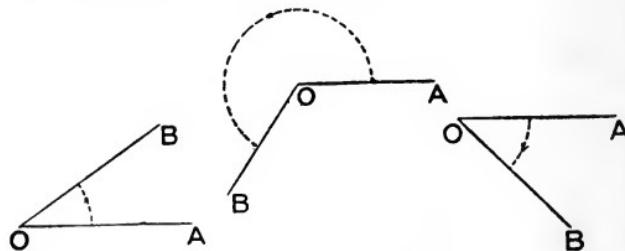
The point from which the two lines are drawn is called the **vertex** of the angle.

The two lines are called the **arms** of the angle.

The angle in the figure may be called the angle **BAC**, or the angle **CAB**. The letter at the vertex must be the middle one in reading the angle.

The single letter at the vertex is sometimes used to denote the angle when there can be no doubt as to which angle is meant.

17. Suppose a straight line **OB** to be fixed, like a rigid rod on a pivot at the point **O**, and be free to rotate in the plane of the paper.



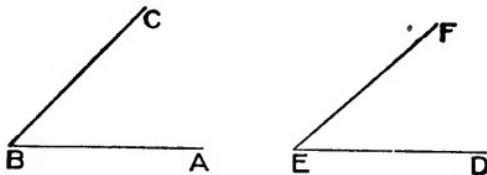
If the line **OB** start from any position **OA**, it may rotate in either of two directions—that in which the hands of a clock rotate, or in the opposite.

When **OB** starts from **OA** and stops at any position an angle is formed with **O** for its vertex and **OA** and **OB** for its arms.

18. An angle is said to be positive or negative according to the direction in which the line that traces out the angle is supposed to have rotated. The direction contrary to that in which the hands of a clock rotate is commonly taken as positive.

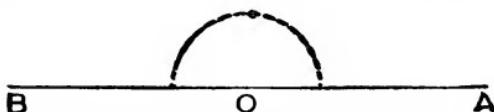
19. The magnitude of an angle depends altogether on the amount of rotation, and is quite independent of the lengths of its arms.

20. If we wish to compare two angles **ABC** and **DEF** we may suppose the angle **ABC** to be placed on



the angle **DEF** so that **B** falls on **E** and **BA** along **ED**. The position of **BC** with respect to **EF** will then show which of the angles is the greater and by how much it is greater than the other.

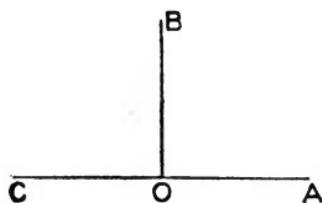
21. Definition.—When a revolving line **OB** has made half of a complete revolution from the initial position **OA** the angle formed is a **straight angle**.



The arms of a straight angle are thus in the same straight line and extend in opposite directions from

the vertex. At the point  $O$ , in the diagram, there are two straight angles on opposite sides of the straight line  $AOB$ , the two straight angles making up the complete revolution.

22. Definition.—If a straight line, starting from  $OA$ , rotates in succession through two equal angles  $AOB$ ,



$BOC$ , the sum of which is a straight angle, each of these angles is called a **right angle**.

A right angle is thus one-half of a straight angle, or one-quarter of a complete revolution.

Each arm of a right angle is said to be **perpendicular** to the other arm.

What is a *vertical* line? a *horizontal* line?

An angle which is less than a right angle is called an **acute angle**.

An angle which is greater than a right angle is called an **obtuse angle**.

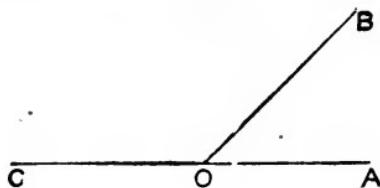
23. If a right  $\angle$  be divided into ninety equal parts, each of these parts is called a **degree**.

$$\text{Thus } 1 \text{ rt. } \angle = 90^\circ,$$

$$1 \text{ st. } \angle = 180^\circ$$

$$1 \text{ revolution} = 360^\circ.$$

24. Let a st. line starting from  $OA$  revolve through two successive  $\angle$ s



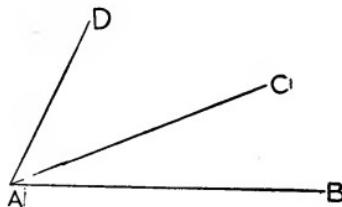
$AOB$ ,  $BOC$  such that  $OC$  is in the same st. line with  $OA$ , but in the opposite direction from the point  $O$ , and consequently  $AOC$  is a st.  $\angle$ .

$$\therefore \angle AOB + \angle BOC = \text{the st. } \angle AOC,$$

$$\therefore \angle AOB + \angle BOC = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle s.$$

Thus the angles which one straight line makes with another on the same side of that other are together equal to two right angles.

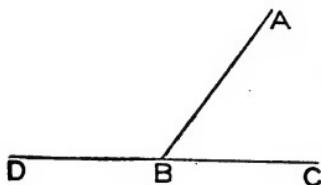
25. **Definition.**—When two angles have the same vertex and a common arm, and the remaining arms on opposite sides of the common arm, they are said to be **adjacent angles**.



Thus  $BAC$  and  $CAD$  are adjacent angles having the same vertex  $A$  and the common arm  $AC$ .

But angles  $BAD$  and  $CAD$ , with the same vertex and the common arm  $AD$  are not adjacent angles.

26. Let the adjacent  $\angle$ s  $ABC$ ,  $ABD$  be together equal to two rt.  $\angle$ s.



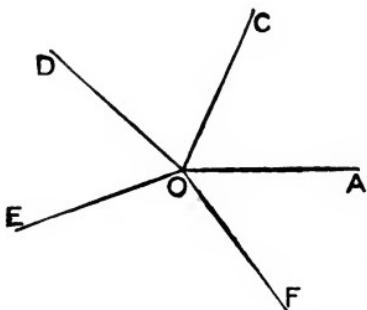
$$\angle ABD + \angle ABC = \text{two rt. } \angle\text{s} = \text{a st. } \angle.$$

That is,  $\angle DBC$  is a st.  $\angle$ ,

and  $\therefore$  line  $DBC$  is a st. line.

Thus, if two adjacent angles are together equal to two right angles, the exterior arms of the angles are in the same straight line.

27. Let a st. line  $OB$ , starting from the position  $OA$ , and rotating in the positive direction, trace out the successive  $\angle$ s:  $AOC$ ,  $COD$ ,  $DOE$ ,  $EOF$ ,  $FOA$ .

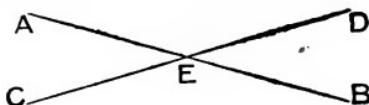


The sum of the successive  $\angle$ s is a complete revolution, and therefore equal to four rt.  $\angle$ s.

Thus, if any number of straight lines meet at a point, the sum of the successive angles is four right angles.

## THEOREM 1

Each of the angles formed by two intersecting straight lines is equal to the vertically opposite angle.



*Hypothesis.*—The two st. lines **AB**, **CD** cut each other at **E**.

*To prove that* (1)  $\angle AEC = \angle BED$ ,

(2)  $\angle AED = \angle BEC$ .

*Proof.*— $\because$  **CED** is a st. line,

$$\angle AEC + \angle AED = \text{two rt. } \angle s.$$

$\therefore$  **AEB** is a st. line,

$$\angle AED + \angle DEB = \text{two rt. } \angle s.$$

$$\therefore \angle AEC + \angle AED = \angle AED + \angle DEB.$$

From each of these equals take away the common  $\angle AED$  and the remainders must be equal to each other.

$$\therefore \angle AEC = \angle DEB.$$

In the same manner it may be shown that  $\angle AED = \angle CEB$ .

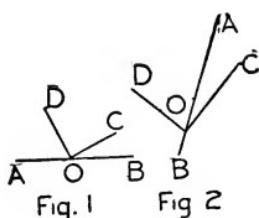
**28. Definitions.**—When two angles are such that their sum is two right angles, they are said to be **supplementary angles**, or each angle is said to be the **supplement** of the other.

If two  $\angle$ s are equal, what about their supplementary  $\angle$ s?

When two angles are such that their sum is one right angle, they are said to be **complementary angles**, or each angle is said to be the **complement** of the other.

## 29.—Exercises

1. If one of the four  $\angle$ s made by two intersecting st. lines be  $17^\circ$ , find the number of degrees in each of the other three.
2. Two st. lines  $ABD$ ,  $CBE$  cut at  $B$ , and  $\angle ABC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ . Prove that the other  $\angle$ s at  $B$  are also rt.  $\angle$ s.
3. If in the figure of Theorem 1 the  $\angle AEC = \frac{2}{3} \angle AED$ , find the number of degrees in each  $\angle$  of the figure.
- 4.



$\angle DOC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , and through the vertex  $O$  a st. line  $AOB$  is drawn.

Prove that:—

In Fig. 1,  $\angle BOC + \angle AOD =$  a rt.  $\angle$ .

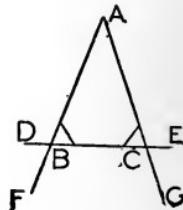
In Fig. 2,  $\angle BOC - \angle AOD =$  a rt.  $\angle$ .

5. In the diagram,

$$\angle ABC = \angle ACB.$$

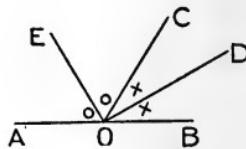
Prove that

- (1)  $\angle ABD = \angle ACE$ ,
- (2)  $\angle FBC = \angle GCB$ ,
- (3)  $\angle DBF = \angle ECG$ .



6. In the diagram,

$AOB$  is a st. line,  
 $\angle COD = \angle DOB$  and  
 $\angle AOE = \angle EOC$ .

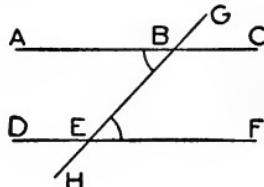


Prove that  $\angle EOD$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , and that  $\angle AOE$  is the complement of  $\angle BOD$ .

7.  $E$  is a point between  $A$  and  $B$  in the st. line  $AB$ ;  $DE$ ,  $FE$  are drawn on opposite sides of  $AB$  and such that  $\angle DEA = \angle FEB$ . Show that  $DEF$  is a st. line.

8. Four st. lines,  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$ ,  $OD$ , are drawn in succession from the point  $O$ , and are such that  $\angle AOB = \angle COD$  and  $\angle BOC = \angle DOA$ . Show that  $AOC$  is a st. line, and also that  $BOD$  is a st. line.

9. In the diagram,  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ ,  $GBEH$  are st. lines and  $\angle ABE = \angle BEF$ .



Prove that

- (1)  $\angle CBE = \angle BED$ ,
- (2)  $\angle GBC = \angle DEH$ ,
- (3)  $\angle ABG = \angle BED$ ,
- (4)  $\angle s\ CBE, BEF$  are supplementary,
- (5)  $\angle s\ ABE, BED$  are supplementary.

30. Definitions.—A figure formed by straight lines is called a **rectilineal** figure.

The figure formed by three straight lines which intersect one another is called a **triangle**.

The three points of intersection are called the **vertices** of the triangle.

The lines between the vertices of the triangle are called the **sides** of the triangle.

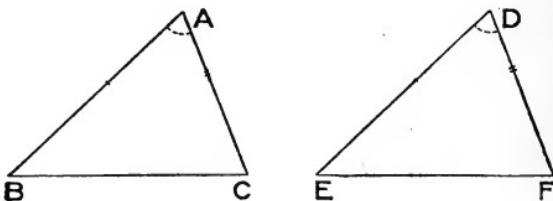
31. Figures that are equal in all respects, so that one may be made to fit the other exactly, are said to be **congruent**.

The sign  $\equiv$  is used to denote the congruence of figures.

## FIRST CASE OF THE CONGRUENCE OF TRIANGLES

## THEOREM 2

If two triangles have two sides and the contained angle of one respectively equal to two sides and the contained angle of the other, the two triangles are congruent.



*Hypothesis.*— $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$  are two  $\triangle$ s having  $AB = DE$ ,  $AC = DF$  and  $\angle A = \angle D$ .

*To prove that* (1)  $BC = EF$ ,

(2)  $\angle B = \angle E$ ,

(3)  $\angle C = \angle F$ ,

(4) area of  $\triangle ABC$  = area of  $\triangle DEF$ ;  
and, hence,  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ .

*Proof.*—Let  $\triangle ABC$  be applied to  $\triangle DEF$  so that vertex  $A$  falls on vertex  $D$  and  $AB$  falls along  $DE$ .

$$\therefore AB = DE,$$

$\therefore$  vertex  $B$  must fall on vertex  $E$ .

$$\therefore \angle A = \angle D,$$

$\therefore AC$  must fall along  $DF$ ,

and  $\therefore$ , as  $AC = DF$ ,

the vertex  $C$  must fall on the vertex  $F$ .

$\therefore \triangle ABC$  coincides with  $\triangle DEF$ .

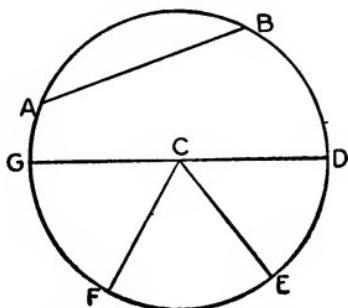
and  $\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ .

**32. Definitions.**—A closed figure formed by four straight lines is called a **quadrilateral**.

In a quadrilateral a straight line joining two opposite vertices is called a **diagonal**.

A quadrilateral having its four sides equal to each other is called a **rhombus**.

A **circle** is a figure consisting of one closed curved line, called the **circumference**, and is such that all straight lines drawn from a certain point within the figure, called the **centre**, to the circumference are equal to each other.



In a circle a st. line drawn from the centre to the circumference is called a **radius**. (Plural—**radii**.)

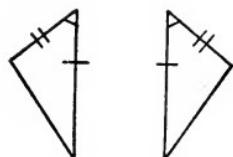
A st. line, as **AB**, joining two points in the circumference is called a **chord**.

If a chord passes through the centre, as **GD**, it is called a **diameter**.

A part of the circumference, as the curved line **FED**, is called an **arc**.

A line drawn from a point in one arm of an angle to a point in the other arm is said to **subtend** the angle. In the diagram the arc **FE** subtends the  $\angle$  **FCE**; or in any  $\triangle$  each side subtends the opposite  $\angle$ .

## 33.—Exercises



1. Prove Theorem 2 when one  $\triangle$  has to be supposed to be turned over before it can be made to coincide with the other.

2. The  $\angle B$  of a  $\triangle ABC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , and  $CB$  is produced to  $D$  making  $BD = BC$ . Prove  $AD = AC$ .

3.  $A, B, C$  are three points in a st. line such that  $AB = BC$ .  $DB$  is  $\perp$   $AC$ . Show that any point in  $DB$ , produced in either direction, is equidistant from  $A$  and  $C$ .

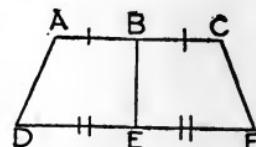
4. Two st. lines  $AOB, COD$  cut one another at  $O$ , so that  $OA = OB$  and  $OC = OD$ ; join  $AD$  and  $BC$ , and prove  $\triangle s AOD, BOC$  congruent.

5. Prove that all chords of a circle which subtend equal angles at the centre are equal to each other.

6. If with the same centre  $O$ , two circles be drawn, and st. lines  $ODB, OEC$  be drawn to meet the circumferences in  $D, E, B, C$ ; prove that  $BE = DC$ .

7.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral having the opposite sides  $AB, CD$  equal and  $\angle B = \angle C$ . Show that  $AC = BD$ .

8. In the diagram,  $ABC$  and  $DEF$  are both  $\perp BE$ . Also  $AB = BC$  and  $DE = EF$ . Prove that  $AD = CF$ .



9. Two st. lines  $AOB, COD$  cut one another at rt.  $\angle s$  at  $O$ .  $AO$  is cut off  $= OB$ , and  $CO = OD$ . Prove that the quadrilateral  $ACBD$  is a rhombus.

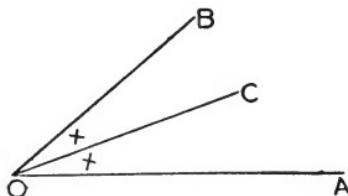
10. Two quadrilaterals  $ABCD, EFGH$  have  $AB = EF$ ,  $BC = FG$ ,  $CD = GH$ ,  $\angle B = \angle F$ ,  $\angle C = \angle G$ . Prove that they are congruent.

34. **Definitions.**—A triangle having its sides all equal to each other is called an **equilateral** triangle.

A triangle having two sides equal to each other is called an **isosceles** triangle.

A triangle having no two of its sides equal to each other is called a **scalene** triangle.

35.



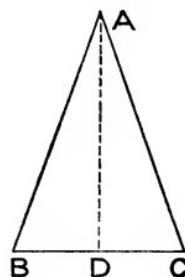
If a straight line revolve in the positive direction about the point O from the position OA to the position OB, it must pass through some position OC such that  $\angle AOC = \angle COB$ .

A straight line which divides an angle into two equal angles is called the **bisector** of the angle.

When a construction is represented in a diagram, although it has not previously been proved that it can be made, it is called a **hypothetical construction**. Thus OC has been drawn to represent the bisector of  $\angle AOB$ .

## THEOREM 3

The angles at the base of an isosceles triangle are equal to each other.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is an isosceles  $\triangle$  having  $AB = AC$ .

*To prove that*  $\angle B = \angle C$ .

*Hypothetical Construction.*—Draw the st. line AD to represent the bisector of  $\angle BAC$ .

*Proof.*—In the two  $\triangle$ s ADB, ADC,

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} AB = AC, \\ AD \text{ is common,} \\ \angle BAD = \angle CAD, \end{array} \right. \begin{array}{l} (\text{Hyp.}) \\ \\ (\text{Const.}) \end{array}$$

$$\therefore \triangle ADB \equiv \triangle ADC, \quad (\text{I--2, page 16.})$$

$$\therefore \angle B = \angle C.$$

36. The two  $\triangle$ s ADB, ADC, in the diagram of Theorem 3, are congruent, and if the isosceles  $\triangle$  be folded along the bisector of the vertical  $\angle$  as crease, the parts on one side of the bisector will exactly fit the corresponding parts on the other side.

**Definition.**—When a figure can be folded along a line so that the part on one side exactly fits the part on the other side, the figure is said to be **symmetrical** with respect to that line.

The line along which the figure is folded is called an **axis of symmetry** of the figure.

Hence the **bisector of the vertical  $\angle$**  of an isosceles  $\triangle$  is an axis of symmetry of the  $\triangle$ .

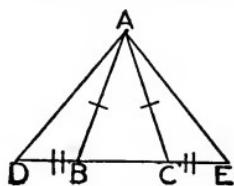
It follows from the above definition of a symmetrical figure that—

If a figure is symmetrical with respect to a st. line, for every point on one side of this axis of symmetry there is a corresponding point on the other side.

Show by folding, in the diagram of Theorem 3, that if  $\angle B = \angle C$ , the side **AB** = the side **AC**.

### 37.—Exercises

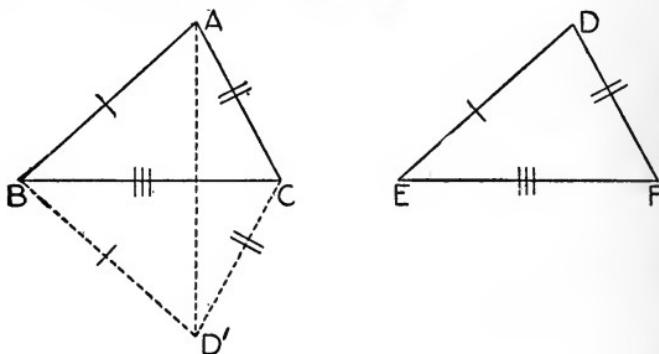
1. An equilateral  $\triangle$  is equiangular.
2. **ABC** is an equilateral  $\triangle$ , and points **D**, **E**, **F**, are taken in **BC**, **CA**, **AB** respectively, such that  $BD = CE = AF$ . Show that **DEF** is an equilateral  $\triangle$ .
3. Show that the exterior  $\angle$ s at the base of an isosceles  $\triangle$  are equal to each other.
4. The opposite  $\angle$ s of a rhombus are equal to each other.
5. **ABC** is an isosceles  $\triangle$  having **AB** = **AC**, and the base **BC** produced to **D** and **E** such that **BD** = **CE**. Prove that **ADE** is an isosceles  $\triangle$ .
6. **AC**, **AD** are two st. lines on opposite sides of **AB**. Prove that if the bisectors of  $\angle$ s **BAC**, **BAD** are at rt.  $\angle$ s, **AC**, **AD** must be in the same st. line.
7. If a figure be symmetrical with respect to a st. line, the st. line joining any two corresponding points cuts the axis at rt.  $\angle$ s.



## SECOND CASE OF THE CONGRUENCE OF TRIANGLES

## THEOREM 4

If two triangles have the three sides of one respectively equal to the three sides of the other, the two triangles are congruent.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC, DEF are two  $\triangle$ s having  $AB = DE$ ,  $AC = DF$  and  $BC = EF$ .

*To prove that*  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ .

*Proof.*—Let  $\triangle DEF$  be applied to  $\triangle ABC$  so that the vertex E falls on the vertex B and EF falls along BC.

Then  $\because EF = BC$ , the vertex F falls on C. Let D take the position D' on the side of BC remote from A.

Join AD'.

$$\therefore BA = BD'$$

$$\therefore \angle BAD' = \angle BD'A. \quad (\text{I--3, p. 20.})$$

Similarly  $\angle CAD' = \angle CD'A$ .

$$\therefore \angle BAD' + \angle CAD' = \angle BD'A + \angle CD'A,$$

$$\text{i.e., } \angle BAC = \angle BD'C.$$

Then in  $\triangle BAC$ ,  $BD'C$  {

$BA = BD'$ ,	$CA = CD'$ ,
$\angle BAC = \angle BD'C$ ,	

$$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle BD'C; \quad (\text{I--2, p. 16.})$$

$$\text{i.e., } \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF.$$

*Note.*—In the proof of this theorem three cases may occur :— $AD'$  may cut  $BC$  as in Fig. 1, or not cut  $BC$  as in Fig. 2, or pass through one end of  $BC$  as in Fig. 3.

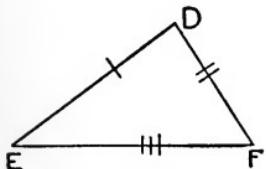
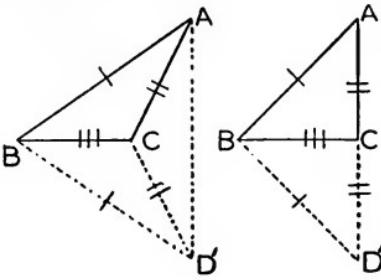
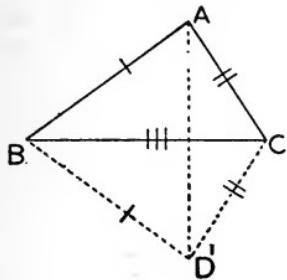


FIG. 1

FIG. 2

FIG. 3

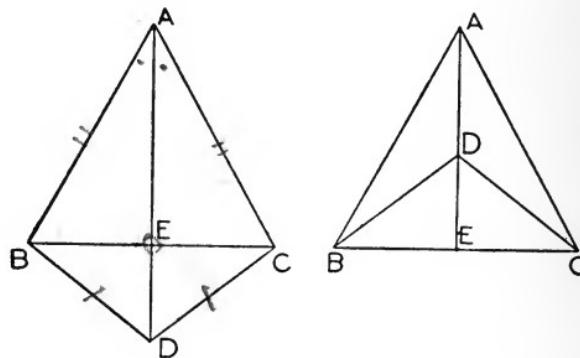
The proof given above is that of the first case. The pupil should work out the proofs of the other two cases.

### 38.—Exercises

1. If the opposite sides of a quadrilateral be equal, the opposite  $\angle$ s are equal.
2. A diagonal of a rhombus bisects each of the  $\angle$ s through which it passes, and consequently, the diagonal is an axis of symmetry in the rhombus.
3. If in a quadrilateral  $ABCD$  the sides  $AB$ ,  $CD$  be equal and  $\angle ABC = \angle BCD$ , prove that  $\angle CDA = \angle DAB$ .
4. Show that equal chords in a circle subtend equal  $\angle$ s at the centre.
5. Prove that the diagonals of a rhombus bisect each other at rt.  $\angle$ s.

## THEOREM 5

If two isosceles triangles are on the same base, the straight line joining their vertices is an axis of symmetry of the figure; and the ends of the base are corresponding points.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC, DBC are two isosceles  $\triangle$ s on the same base BC.

*To prove that AD is an axis of symmetry of the figure.*

*Proof.*—AD, or AD produced, cuts BC at E.

In  $\triangle$ s ABD, ACD,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} AB = AC \\ BD = CD, \\ AD \text{ is common,} \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \triangle BAD \cong \triangle CAD. \quad (\text{I--4, p. 22.})$$

and  $\therefore \angle BAD = \angle CAD$ .

In  $\triangle$ s BAE, CAE,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} BA = CA, \\ AE \text{ is common,} \\ \angle BAE = \angle CAE, \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \triangle BAE \cong \triangle CAE. \quad (\text{I--2, p. 16.})$$

Similarly,  $\triangle BDE \cong \triangle CDE$ .

Hence, each part of the figure on one side of **AD** is congruent to the corresponding part on the other side, and if the figure be folded on **AD**, as crease, the corresponding parts will coincide.

∴ **AD** is an axis of symmetry of the figure; and **B**, **C** are corresponding points.

### 39.—Exercises

1. If two circles cut at two points, the st. line which joins their centres bisects at rt. ∠s the st. line joining the points of section.

2. **A**, **B**, **C** are three points each of which is equidistant from two fixed points **P**, **Q**. Show that **A**, **B**, **C** are in a st. line which bisects the st. line joining **P**, **Q** and cuts it at rt. ∠s.

---

### CONSTRUCTIONS

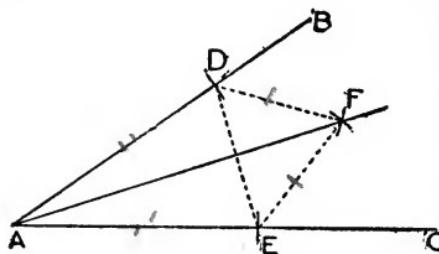
40. In Theoretical Geometry the use of instruments in making constructions is generally restricted to an ungraduated straight edge and a pair of compasses. With these instruments we can:—

1. Draw a st. line from one point to another.
2. Produce a st. line.
3. Describe a circle with any point as its centre and radius equal to any given st. line.
4. Cut off from one st. line a part equal to another st. line.

**NOTE.**—All constructions should be accurately and neatly drawn by the pupil, and, by means of theorems already proved, the correctness of the method of construction should be shown.

## PROBLEM 1

To bisect a given angle.



Let **BAC** be the given  $\angle$ .

*Construction.*—With the compasses cut off equal distances **AD** and **AE** from the arms of the  $\angle$ .

With centre **D** describe an arc.

With centre **E** and the same radius describe another arc cutting the first at **F**.

Join **AF**.

Then **AF** is the bisector of  $\angle$  **BAC**.

*Proof.*—Join **DF**, **EF**, **DE**.

**ADE**, **FDE** are isosceles  $\triangle$ s on the same base **DE**,

$\therefore$  **AF** is an axis of symmetry of the figure, (I—5, p. 24.)

$\therefore$  **AF** bisects  $\angle$  **BAC**.

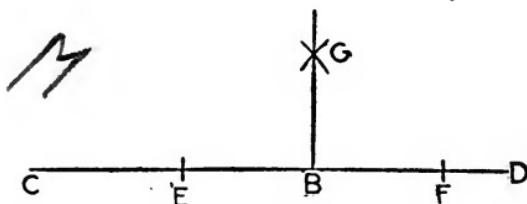
*Note.*—The equal radii for the arcs with centres **D** and **E** must be taken long enough for the arcs to intersect.

## 41.—Exercises

1. Divide a given  $\angle$  into four equal parts.
2. Prove that the bisectors of a pair of vertically opposite  $\angle$ s are in the same st. line.
3. Bisect a st.  $\angle$ .

## PROBLEM 2

To draw a perpendicular to a given straight line from a given point in the line.



Let  $CD$  be the given st. line and  $B$  the given point.

*Construction.*—Bisect the st.  $\angle CBD$  by the st. line  $BG$ .

*Proof.*—Then each of the  $\angle$ s  $CBG$ ,  $DBG$  is half of a st.  $\angle$  and  $\therefore$  each is a rt.  $\angle$ .

$\therefore BG$  is  $\perp$   $CD$ .

## 42.—Exercises

Using ruler and compasses only, construct  $\angle$ s of (1),  $45^\circ$ ; (2),  $22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ ; (3),  $135^\circ$ ; (4),  $67\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ ; (5),  $225^\circ$ .

**43. Definitions.**—If one angle of a triangle be a right angle, the triangle is called a **right-angled** triangle.

In a right-angled triangle the side opposite the right angle is called the **hypotenuse**.

If one angle of a triangle be an obtuse angle, the triangle is called an **obtuse-angled** triangle.

If all three angles of a triangle be acute angles, the triangle is called an **acute-angled** triangle.

The **altitude** of a triangle is the length of the perpendicular from any vertex to the opposite side.

**44.—Exercises**

1. Construct a rt.- $\angle d$   $\triangle$  having one of the arms of the rt.  $\angle$  three times the other.
2. Construct a rt.- $\angle d$   $\triangle$  having the hypotenuse three times one of the arms of the rt.  $\angle$ .
3. Given the length of the hypotenuse and of one of the sides of a rt.- $\angle d$   $\triangle$ , construct the  $\triangle$ .
4. Construct a rhombus having each of its diagonals equal to twice a given st. line.
5. Construct a rhombus having one diagonal twice and the other four times a given st. line.
6. Construct an isosceles  $\triangle$  having given its altitude and the length of one of the equal sides.
7. Construct an isosceles rt.- $\angle d$   $\triangle$ .

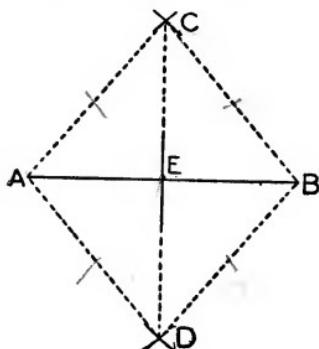
**45. Definitions.**—Sometimes when a proposition has been proved the truth of another proposition follows as an immediate consequence of the former; such a proposition is called a **corollary**.

A straight line which bisects a line of given length at right angles is called the **right bisector** of the line.

---

## PROBLEM 3

To bisect a given straight line.



Let  $AB$  be the given st. line.

*Construction.*—With centre  $A$  and any radius that is plainly greater than half of  $AB$ , draw two arcs, one on each side of  $AB$ .

With centre  $B$  and the same radius draw two arcs cutting the first two at  $C$  and  $D$ .

Join  $CD$ , cutting  $AB$  at  $E$ .

$E$  is the middle point of  $AB$ .

*Proof.*—Join  $CA$ ,  $AD$ ,  $DB$ ,  $BC$ .

$CAB$ ,  $DAB$  are isosceles  $\triangle$ s on the same base  $AB$ ,

$\therefore CD$  is an axis of symmetry of the figure; and  
 $A$ ,  $B$  are corresponding points. (I—5, p. 24.)

$$\therefore AE = EB.$$

**Corollary.**—From the above proof it follows that the  $\angle$ s at  $E$  are rt.  $\angle$ s, and hence,  $CD$  is the right bisector of  $AB$ .

46. **Definition.**—The straight line drawn from a vertex of a triangle to the middle point of the opposite side is called a **median** of the triangle.

#### 47.—Exercises

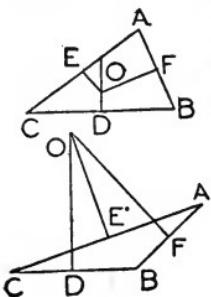
1. Divide a given st. line into four equal parts.

✓ 2. In an isosceles  $\triangle$  prove that the bisector of the vertical  $\angle$  is a median of the  $\triangle$ .

3. In an equilateral  $\triangle$  prove that the bisectors of the  $\angle$ s are medians of the  $\triangle$ .

✓ 4. Show that any point in the right bisector of a given st. line is equidistant from the ends of the given line.

✓ 5. In any  $\triangle$  the point of intersection of the right bisectors of any two sides is equidistant from the three vertices.



✓ 6. The right bisectors of the three sides of a  $\triangle$  pass through one point.

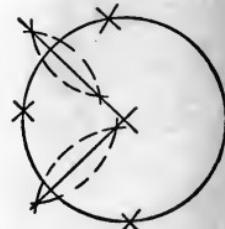
*The right bisectors of AB, BC meet at O. Bisect AC at E. Join EO. Prove  $OE \perp AC$ .*

7. Describe a circle through the three vertices of a  $\triangle$ .

8. Describe a circle to pass through three given points that are not in the same st. line.

9. Show how any number of circles may be drawn through two given points.

What line contains the centres of all these circles?



10. In a given st. line find a point that is equally distant from two given points.

11. On a given base describe an isosceles  $\triangle$  so that the sum of the two equal sides may equal a given st. line.

In what case is this impossible?

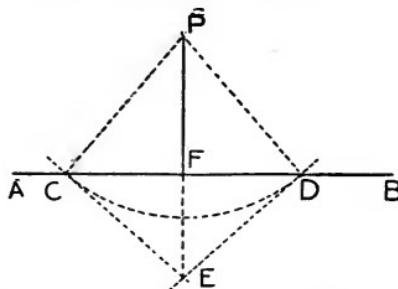
12. Construct a rhombus having its diagonals equal to two given st. lines.

✓ 13. In  $\triangle ABC$  find in  $CA$ , produced if necessary, a point  $D$  so that  $DC = DB$ .

✓ 14. In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\triangle DEF$ ,  $AB = DE$ ,  $AC = DF$  and the medians drawn from  $B$  and  $E$  are equal to each other. Prove that  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ .

#### PROBLEM 4

To draw a perpendicular to a given straight line from a given point without the line.



Let  $P$  be the given point and  $AB$  the given st. line.

*Construction.*—Describe an arc with centre  $P$  to cut  $AB$  at  $C$  and  $D$ .

With centres  $C$  and  $D$ , and equal radii, describe two arcs cutting at  $E$ .

Join  $PE$ , cutting  $AB$  at  $F$ .

$PF$  is the required perpendicular.

*Proof.*—Join  $PC$ ,  $CE$ ,  $ED$ ,  $DP$ .

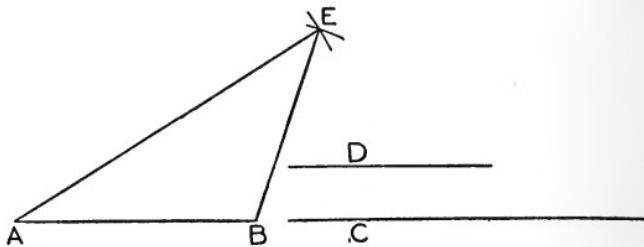
 ∵  $PCD$ ,  $ECD$  are isosceles  $\triangle$ s on the same base  $CD$ ,

∴  $PE$  is an axis of symmetry of the figure; and  $C$ ,  $D$  are corresponding points. (I—5, p. 24.)

∴  $\angle$ s at  $F$  are rt.  $\angle$ s, and  $PF$  is  $\perp AB$ .

## PROBLEM 5

To construct a triangle with sides of given length.



Let  $AB$ ,  $C$  and  $D$  be the given lengths.

*Construction.*—With centre  $A$  and radius  $C$  describe an arc.

With centre  $B$  and radius  $D$  describe an arc cutting the first arc at  $E$ .

Join  $EA$ ,  $EB$ .

$AEB$  is the required  $\triangle$ .

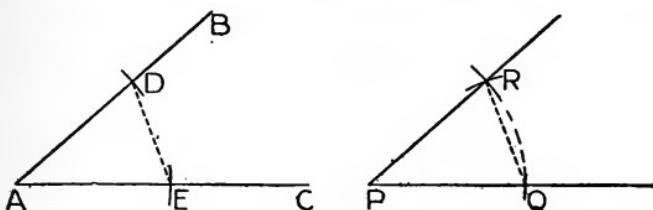
QUESTION—*In what case would the above construction fail?*

## 48.—Exercises

1. On a given st. line describe an equilateral  $\triangle$ .
2. On a given base describe an isosceles  $\triangle$  having each of the equal sides double the base.
3. Construct a rhombus having given a diagonal and the length of one of the equal sides.

## PROBLEM 6

To construct an angle equal to a given angle.



Let  $\angle BAC$  be the given  $\angle$ .

*Construction.*—From  $AC$ ,  $AB$  cut off equal parts  $AE$ ,  $AD$ .

Draw a line and mark a point  $P$  in it.

Cut off  $PQ = AE$ .

With centre  $P$  and radius  $PQ$  describe an arc.

With centre  $Q$  and radius  $DE$  describe an arc cutting the arc with centre  $P$  at  $R$ .

Join  $RP$ .

$\angle RPQ$  is the required  $\angle$ .

*Proof.*—Join  $DE$ ,  $RQ$ .

In  $\triangle PRQ$ ,  $ADE$ .  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} PQ = AE, \\ PR = AD, \\ RQ = DE, \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \angle RPQ = \angle BAC. \quad (\text{I--4, p. 22.})$$


---

## 49.—Exercises

1. Construct a rhombus having given one of its  $\angle$ s and the length of one of its equal sides.
  2. Construct a quadrilateral equal in all respects to a given quadrilateral.
  3. On a given st. line  $BC$  construct a  $\triangle$  having the  $\angle$ s  $B, C$  equal to two given acute  $\angle$ s.
  4. Construct an  $\angle$  equal to the complement of a given acute  $\angle$ .
  5. Construct an  $\angle$  equal to the supplement of a given  $\angle$ .
  6. On a given base describe an isosceles  $\triangle$  having its altitude equal to a given st. line.
  7. In the side  $BC$  of a  $\triangle ABC$  find a point  $E$ , such that  $AE$  is half the sum of  $AB$  and  $AC$ .
  8. The  $\triangle$  formed by joining the middle points of the three sides of an isosceles  $\triangle$  is isosceles.
  9.  $AB$  is a given st. line and  $C$  is a given point without the line. Find the point  $D$  so that  $C$  and  $D$  may be symmetrical with respect to  $AB$ .
  10.  $C, D$  are given points, (1) on opposite sides, (2) on the same side of a given st. line  $AB$ . Find a point  $P$  in  $AB$  so that  $CP, DP$  make equal  $\angle$ s with  $AB$ .
  11. The right bisectors of the two sides  $AB, AC$  of  $\triangle ABC$  meet at  $D$ , and  $E$  is the middle point of  $BC$ . Show that  $DE \perp BC$ .
-

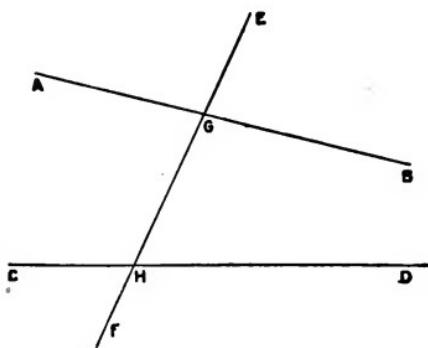
## PARALLEL STRAIGHT LINES

50. **Definitions.**—Two straight lines *in the same plane* which do not meet when produced for any finite distance in either direction are said to be **parallel** to each other.

A straight line which cuts two, or more, other straight lines is called a **transversal**.

A quadrilateral that has both pairs of opposite sides parallel to each other is called a **parallelogram**.

Draw a st. line **EF** cutting two other st. lines **AB** and **CD** at **G** and **H**.



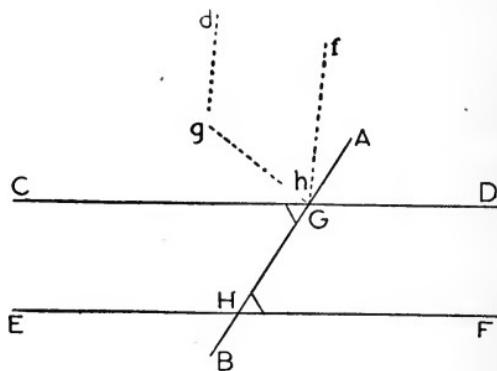
Eight  $\angle$ s are thus formed, four of which, **AGH**, **BGH**, **CHG**, **DHG**, being between **AB** and **CD**, are called **interior  $\angle$ s**. The other four are called **exterior  $\angle$ s**.

The interior  $\angle$ s **AGH** and **GHD**, on opposite sides of the transversal, are called **alternate  $\angle$ s**. Thus also, **BGH** and **GHC** are alternate  $\angle$ s.

Name four pairs of equal angles in the diagram.

## THEOREM 6

If a transversal meeting two straight lines makes the alternate angles equal to each other, the two straight lines are parallel.



*Hypothesis.* — The transversal **AB** meeting **CD** and **EF** makes  $\angle \text{CGH} =$  the alternate  $\angle \text{GHF}$ .

*To prove that* **CD**  $\parallel$  **EF**.

*Proof.* — Detach the part **DGHF** from the figure and mark it **dghf**.

Slide **dghf**, from its original position, along the transversal until **h** comes to the point **G**.

Then, rotate **dghf**, in either direction, through a st.  $\angle$  about the point **G**.

When the rotation is complete **h** **g** coincides with **G** **H**.

And,  $\because \angle fhg = \angle CGH$ ,

$\therefore hg$  coincides with **GC**.

Also,  $\because \angle dhg = \angle GHE$ ,

$\therefore gd$  coincides with **HE**.

If it be possible let **CD** and **EF** when produced meet towards **D** and **F**.

Then  $h f$  and  $g d$  must meet towards  $f$  and  $d$ ,

$\therefore$  **GC** and **HE** must meet towards **C** and **E**.

Hence, **CD** and **EF** when produced must meet in two points.

This is impossible by the definition of a st. line.

$\therefore$  **CD** and **EF** do not meet towards **D** and **F**, and hence cannot meet towards **C** and **E**.

$\therefore \text{CD} \parallel \text{EF}$ .

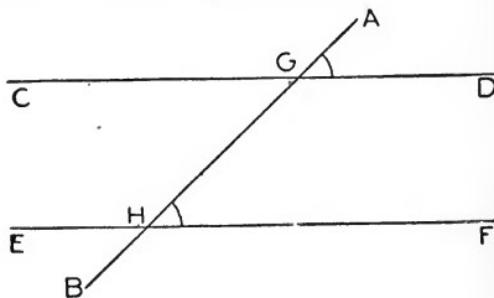
**NOTE.**—*If this proof is not at once clear to the pupil he should make a drawing of the diagram, cut out the part  $d g h f$ , and turning it about, fit it to **E H G C**.*

### 51.—Exercises

1. Lines which are  $\perp$  to the same st. line are  $\parallel$  to each other.
2. If both pairs of opposite sides of a quadrilateral are equal to each other, the quadrilateral is a  $\parallel\text{gm}$ .
3. A rhombus is a  $\parallel\text{gm}$ .
4. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral bisect each other, the quadrilateral is a  $\parallel\text{gm}$ .
5. No two st. lines drawn from two vertices of a  $\triangle$ , and terminated in the opposite sides, can bisect each other.

## THEOREM 7

If a transversal meeting two straight lines makes (1) an exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side of the transversal, or, (2) the two interior angles on the same side of the transversal supplementary, in either case the two straight lines are parallel.



(1) *Hypothesis.* —  $AB$  meeting  $CD$ ,  $EF$  makes  $\angle AGD = \angle GHF$ .

*To prove.* —  $CD \parallel EF$ .

*Proof.* —  $\angle CGH = \angle AGD$ , (I—1, p. 13.)

but  $\angle AGD = \angle GHF$ , (Hyp.)

$$\therefore \angle CGH = \angle GHF.$$

$\therefore CD \parallel EF$ . (I—6, p. 36.)

(2) *Hypothesis.* —  $AB$  meeting  $CD$ ,  $EF$  makes  $\angle DGH + \angle GHF = \text{two rt. } \angle s$ .

*To prove.* —  $CD \parallel EF$ .

*Proof.* —  $\angle CGH + \angle DGH = \text{two rt. } \angle s$ ,

but  $\angle DGH + \angle GHF = \text{two rt. } \angle s$ , (Hyp.)

$$\therefore \angle CGH + \angle DGH = \angle DGH + \angle GHF.$$

From each take the common  $\angle DGH$ , and  $\angle CGH = \angle GHF$ ,

$\therefore CD \parallel EF$  (I—6, p. 36.)

52. The following statement of a fundamental property of parallel straight lines is called **Playfair's axiom** :—

Through any point one, and only one, straight line can be drawn parallel to a given straight line.

From this axiom it follows that :—

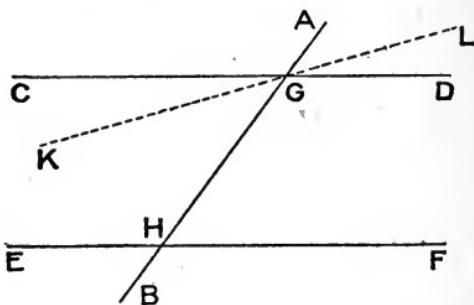
No two intersecting straight lines can be parallel to the same straight line.

∴ straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line are not intersecting lines, i.e. :—

Straight lines which are parallel to the same straight line are parallel to each other.

## THEOREM 8

If a transversal cuts two parallel straight lines, the alternate angles are equal to each other.



*Hypothesis.*—The transversal  $\text{AB}$  cuts the  $\parallel$  st. lines  $\text{CD}$ ,  $\text{EF}$  at  $\text{G}$ ,  $\text{H}$ .

*To prove that*  $\angle \text{CGH} = \angle \text{GHF}$ .

*Proof.*—If  $\angle \text{CGH}$  be not equal to  $\angle \text{GHF}$ , make the  $\angle \text{KGH} = \angle \text{GHF}$ , and produce  $\text{KG}$  to  $\text{L}$ .

Then  $\because \text{AB}$  cuts  $\text{KL}$  and  $\text{EF}$ , making  $\angle \text{KGH} =$  the alternate  $\angle \text{GHF}$ .

$\therefore \text{KL}$  is  $\parallel$  to  $\text{EF}$ . (I—6, p. 36.)

But  $\text{CD}$  is, by hypothesis,  $\parallel$  to  $\text{EF}$ .

That is, two intersecting st. lines,  $\text{KL}$  and  $\text{CD}$ , are both  $\parallel$   $\text{EF}$ , which is impossible.

$\therefore \angle \text{CGH} = \angle \text{GHF}$ .

53. Consider the method of proof used in Theorem 8.

To prove that  $\angle \text{CGH} = \angle \text{GHF}$  we began by assuming that these  $\angle$ s are not equal, and then showed that something absurd or contrary to the hypothesis must follow, and concluded that  $\angle \text{CGH} = \angle \text{GHF}$ .

This method of proof, in which we begin by assuming that the conclusion is not true, is called the **indirect method of demonstration**.

54. Compare Theorems 6 and 8.

In both cases a transversal cuts two straight lines.

In Theorem 6 the hypothesis is that the alternate angles are equal, and the conclusion is that the lines are parallel.

In Theorem 8 the hypothesis is that the lines are parallel, and the conclusion is that the alternate angles are equal.

Thus in these propositions the hypothesis of each is the conclusion of the other.

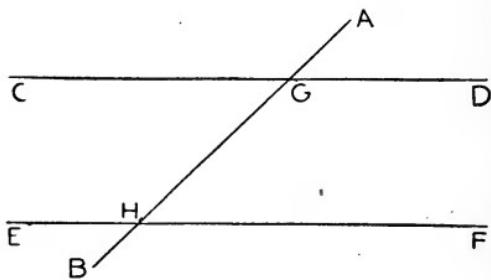
When two propositions are such that the hypothesis of each is the conclusion of the other, they are said to be **converse propositions**; or each is said to be the converse of the other.

The converse of a true proposition may, or may not, be true. The converse propositions in Theorems 6 and 8 are both true; but consider the true proposition:— All rt.  $\angle$ s are equal to each other; and its converse:— All equal  $\angle$ s are rt.  $\angle$ s. The last is easily seen to be untrue. Consequently proof must in general be given for each of a pair of converse propositions.

When a proposition is known to be true and we wish to prove the converse we commonly use the indirect method.

## THEOREM 9

If a transversal cuts two parallel straight lines, it makes (1) an exterior angle equal to the interior and opposite angle on the same side of the transversal, and (2) the interior angles on the same side of the transversal supplementary.



*Hypothesis.*—AB cuts the  $\parallel$  st. lines CD, EF.

*To prove that* (1)  $\angle AGD = \angle AHF$ .

(2)  $\angle DGH + \angle GHF = \text{two rt. } \angle\text{s}$ .

*Proof.*—(1)  $\because$  CD  $\parallel$  EF,

$$\therefore \angle GHF = \angle CGH. \quad (\text{I--8, p. 40.})$$

$$\text{but } \angle CGH = \angle AGD, \quad (\text{I--1, p. 13.})$$

$$\therefore \angle AGD = \angle GHF.$$

(2)  $\because \angle GHF = \angle CGH$ ,

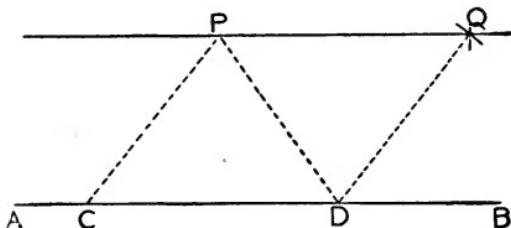
$$\therefore \angle GHF + \angle DGH = \angle CGH + \angle DGH;$$

$$\text{but } \angle CGH + \angle DGH = \text{a st. } \angle$$

$\therefore \angle\text{s GHF, DGH are supplementary.}$

## PROBLEM 7

Through a given point to draw a straight line parallel to a given straight line.



Let **P** be the given point and **AB** the given st. line.

*Construction.*—Take two points **C, D**, in **AB**.

With centre **P** and radius **CP** describe an arc.

With centre **D** and radius **DP** describe an arc cutting the first at **Q**.

Join **PQ**.

Then **PQ**  $\parallel$  **AB**.

*Proof.*—Join **PC, DQ, PD**.

In  $\triangle$ s **PCD, DQP**,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{PC} = \text{DQ}, \\ \text{CD} = \text{QP}, \\ \text{PD is common,} \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \angle \text{CDP} = \angle \text{DPQ}. \quad (\text{I}-4, \text{ p. 22.})$$

$$\therefore \text{PQ} \parallel \text{AB}. \quad (\text{I}-6, \text{ p. 36.})$$

## 55.—Exercises

- 1. If a st. line be  $\perp$  to one of two  $\parallel$  st. lines, it is also  $\perp$  to the other.
- 2. Prove, by using a transversal, that st. lines which are  $\parallel$  to the same st. line are  $\parallel$  to each other.

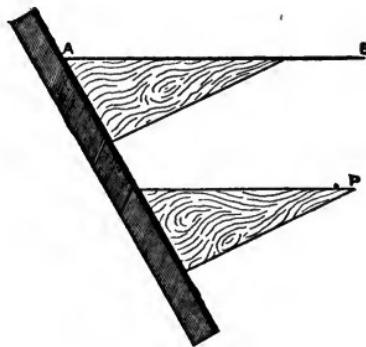
1. 3. Any st. line  $\parallel$  to the base of an isosceles  $\triangle$  makes equal  $\angle$ s with the sides, or the sides produced.

4. Construct a  $\triangle$  having two of its  $\angle$ s respectively equal to two given  $\angle$ s, and the length of the  $\perp$  from the vertex of the third  $\angle$  to the opposite side equal to a given st. line.

5. Construct a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  having given one side and the opposite  $\angle$ .

6. If one  $\angle$  of a  $\parallel$ gm be a rt.  $\angle$ , the other three  $\angle$ s are also rt.  $\angle$ s.

7. Give a proof for the following method of drawing a line through  $P \parallel AB$  :—



Place the set-square with the hypotenuse along the st. line  $AB$ .

Place a ruler against another side of the set-square as in the diagram.

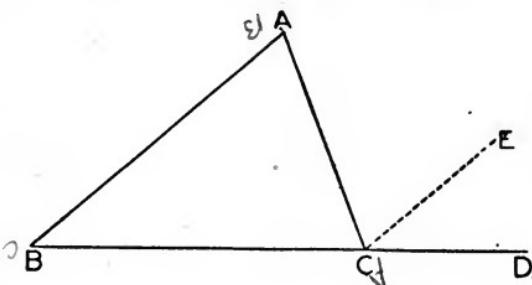
Hold the ruler firmly in position and slide the set-square along it until the hypotenuse comes to the point  $P$ .

A line drawn through  $P$  along the set-square is  $\parallel AB$ .

## TRIANGLES

## THEOREM 10

The exterior angle, made by producing one side of a triangle, equals the sum of the two interior and opposite angles; and the three interior angles are together equal to two right angles.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a  $\triangle$  having BC produced to D.  
*To prove that* (1)  $\angle ACD = \angle A + \angle B$ .

$$(2) \angle A + \angle B + \angle ACB = \text{two rt. } \angle s.$$

*Construction.*—Through C draw CE  $\parallel$  AB.

*Proof.*—  $\because CE \parallel AB$ ,

and AC is a transversal,

$$\therefore \angle ACE = \angle A. \quad (\text{I--8, p. 40.})$$

$\because BD$  is a transversal,

$$\therefore \angle ECD = \angle B. \quad (\text{I--9, p. 42.})$$

$$\therefore \angle ACE + \angle ECD = \angle A + \angle B.$$

$$\text{i.e., } \angle ACD = \angle A + \angle B.$$

$$\text{Hence, } \angle A + \angle B + \angle ACB = \angle ACD + \angle ACB.$$

$$\text{But } \angle ACD + \angle ACB = \text{two rt. } \angle s,$$

$$\therefore \angle A + \angle B + \angle ACB = \text{two rt. } \angle s.$$

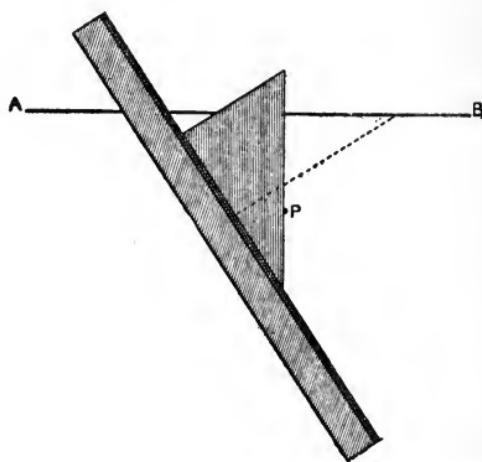
**Cor.**—The exterior angle of a triangle is greater than either of the interior and opposite angles.

## 56.—Exercises

1. Prove Theorem 10 by means of a st. line drawn through the vertex  $\parallel$  the base.
2. If two  $\triangle$ s have two  $\angle$ s of one respectively equal to two  $\angle$ s of the other, the third  $\angle$  of one is equal to the third  $\angle$  of the other.
3. The sum of the  $\angle$ s of a quadrilateral is equal to four rt.  $\angle$ s.
4. The sum of the  $\angle$ s of a pentagon is six rt.  $\angle$ s.
5. Each  $\angle$  of a equilateral  $\triangle$  is an  $\angle$  of  $60^\circ$ .
6. Find a point **B** in a given st. line **CD** such that, if **AB** be drawn to **B** from a given point **A**, the  $\angle \text{ABC}$  will equal a given  $\angle$ .
7. Show that the bisectors of the two acute  $\angle$ s of a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  contain an  $\angle$  of  $135^\circ$ .
8. If both pairs of opposite  $\angle$ s of a quadrilateral are equal, the quadrilateral is a  $\parallel\text{gm}$ .
9. **C** is the middle point of the st. line **AB**. **CD** is drawn in any direction and equal to **CA** or **CB**. Prove that **ADB** is a rt.  $\angle$ .
10. On **AB**, **AC**, sides of a  $\triangle \text{ABC}$ , equilateral  $\triangle$ s **ABD**, **ACE** are described externally. Show that **DC** = **BE**.
11. **AB** is any chord of a circle of which the centre is **O**. **AB** is produced to **C** so that **BC** = **BO**. **CO** is joined, cutting the circle at **D** and is produced to cut it again at **E**. Show that  $\angle \text{AOE}$  = three times  $\angle \text{BCD}$ .
12. If the exterior  $\angle$ s at **B** and **C** of a  $\triangle \text{ABC}$  be bisected and the bisectors be produced to meet at **D**, the  $\angle \text{BDC}$  equals half the sum of  $\angle$ s **ABC**, **ACB**.

13. Show that a  $\triangle$  must have at least two acute  $\angle$ s.
14. In an acute- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  show that the  $\perp$  from a vertex to the opposite side cannot fall outside of the  $\triangle$ .
15. In an obtuse- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  show that the  $\perp$  from the vertex of the obtuse  $\angle$  on the opposite side falls within the  $\triangle$ , but that the  $\perp$  from the vertex of either acute  $\angle$  on the opposite side falls outside of the  $\triangle$ .
16. In a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  where do the  $\perp$ s from the vertices on the opposite sides fall?
17. Only one  $\perp$  can be drawn from a given point to a given st. line.
18. Not more than two st. lines each equal to the same given st. line can be drawn from a given point to a given st. line.
19. D is a point taken within the  $\triangle ABC$ . Join DB, DC; and show, by producing BD to meet AC, that  $\angle BDC > \angle BAC$ .
20. With compasses and ruler only, construct the following  $\angle$ s:  $-30^\circ$ ,  $15^\circ$ ,  $120^\circ$ ,  $105^\circ$ ,  $75^\circ$ ,  $67\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ ,  $150^\circ$ ,  $195^\circ$ ,  $210^\circ$ ,  $240^\circ$ ,  $255^\circ$ ,  $285^\circ$ ,  $-30^\circ$ ,  $-75^\circ$ ,  $-135^\circ$ .
21. If a transversal cut two st. lines so as to make the interior  $\angle$ s on one side of the transversal together less than two rt.  $\angle$ s, the two lines when produced shall meet on that side of the transversal.
22. The bisector of the exterior vertical  $\angle$  of an isosceles  $\triangle$  is  $\parallel$  to the base.
23. Give a proof for the following method of drawing a line through P  $\perp$  AB:—

First place the set-square in the position shown by the dotted line, with its hypotenuse along **AB**.



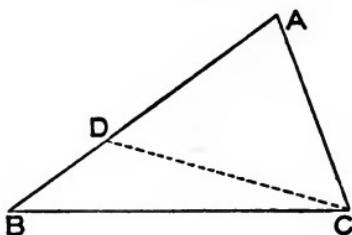
Place a ruler along one of the sides of the set-square and hold it firmly in that position.

Rotate the set-square through its right  $\angle$ , thus bringing the other side against the ruler, and slide the set-square along the ruler to the position shown by the shaded  $\triangle$ .

A line drawn through P, along the hypotenuse of the set-square, is perpendicular to **AB**.

## THEOREM 11

If one side of a triangle is greater than another side, the angle opposite the greater side is greater than the angle opposite the less side.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a  $\triangle$  having  $AB > AC$ .

*To prove that*  $\angle ACB > \angle ABC$ .

*Construction.*—From AB cut off  $AD = AC$ . Join DC.

*Proof.*—In  $\triangle ADC$ ,

$$\because AD = AC,$$

$$\therefore \angle ADC = \angle ACD. \quad (\text{I--3, p. 20.})$$

But  $\angle ACB > \angle ACD$ ,

$$\therefore \angle ACB > \angle ADC.$$

In  $\triangle BDC$ ,

$\because BD$  is produced to A,

$\therefore$  exterior  $\angle ADC >$  interior and opposite

$$\angle DBC. \quad (\text{I--10, Cor., p. 45.})$$

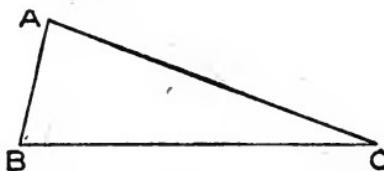
But  $\angle ACB > \angle ADC$ ;

much more  $\therefore$  is  $\angle ACB > \angle ABC$ .

## THEOREM 12

(Converse of Theorem 11)

If one angle of a triangle is greater than another angle of the same triangle, the side opposite the greater angle is greater than the side opposite the less.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle ABC \angle B > \angle C$ .

*To show that*  $AC > AB$ .

*Proof.*—If  $AC$  be not  $> AB$ ,

then either  $AC = AB$ ,

or  $AC < AB$ .

If  $AC = AB$ ,

then  $\angle B = \angle C$ . (I—3, p. 20.)

But this is not so,  $\therefore AC$  is not  $= AB$ .

If  $AC < AB$ ,

then  $\angle B < \angle C$ . (I—11, p. 49.)

But this also is not so,  $\therefore AC$  is not  $< AB$ .

Hence  $\because AC$  is neither  $=$  nor  $< AB$ ,

$\therefore AC > AB$ .

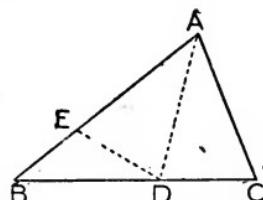
## 57.—Exercises

1. The perpendicular is the shortest st. line that can be drawn from a given point to a given straight line.

The length of the  $\perp$  from a given point to a given st. line is called the distance of the point from the line.



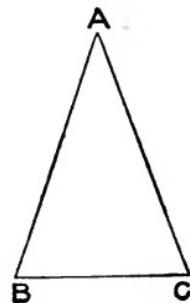
2. **ABCD** is a quadrilateral, of which **AD** is the longest side, and **BC** the shortest. Show that  $\angle B > \angle D$ , and that  $\angle C > \angle A$ .
3. The hypotenuse of a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  is greater than either of the other two sides.
4. A st. line drawn from the vertex of an isosceles  $\triangle$  to any point in the base is less than either of the equal sides.
5. A st. line drawn from the vertex of an isosceles  $\triangle$  to any point in the base produced is greater than either of the equal sides.
6. If one side of a  $\triangle$  be less than another, the  $\angle$  opposite the less side is acute.
7. If **D** be any point in the side **BC** of a  $\triangle ABC$ , the greater of the sides **AB, AC**, is greater than **AD**.
8. **AB** is drawn from **A**  $\perp$  **CD**. **E, F** are two points in **CD** on the same side of **B**, and such that  $BE < BF$ . Show that  $AE < AF$ . Prove the same proposition when **E, F** are on opposite sides of **B**.
9. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  having  $AB > AC$ . The bisector of  $\angle A$  meets **BC** at **D**. Show that  $BD > DC$ . Give a general statement of this proposition.
10. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  having  $AB > AC$ . If the bisectors of  $\angle s B, C$  meet at **D**, show that  $BD > DC$ .
11. Prove Theorem 11 from the following construction : Bisect  $\angle A$  by **AD** which meets **BC** at **D**; from **AB** cut off  $AE = AC$ , and join **ED**.
12. The  $\angle$ s at the ends of the greatest side of a  $\triangle$  are acute.
13. If  $AB > AD$  in the ||gm **ABCD**,  $\angle ADB > \angle BDC$ .



## THEOREM 13

(Converse of Theorem 3)

If two angles of a triangle are equal to each other, the sides opposite these equal angles are equal to each other.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle ABC \angle B = \angle C$ .

*To prove that*  $AB = AC$ .

*Proof.*— If  $AB$  is not  $= AC$ ,

let  $AB > AC$ .

Then  $\angle C > \angle B$ . (I—11, p. 49.)

But this is not so.

$\therefore AB$  is not  $> AC$ .

Similarly it may be shown that

$AB$  is not  $< AC$ .

$\therefore AB = AC$ .

## 58.—Exercises

1. An equiangular  $\triangle$  is equilateral.

2.  $BD, CD$  bisect the  $\angle s ABC, ACB$  at the base of an isosceles  $\triangle ABC$ . Show that  $\triangle DBC$  is isosceles.

3.  $ABC$  is a  $\triangle$  having  $AB, AC$  produced to  $D, E$  respectively. The exterior  $\angle s DBC, ECB$  are bisected by

**BF, CF,** which meet at **F.** Show that, if **FB = FC,** the  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles.

4. On the same side of **AB** the two  $\triangle$ s **ACB, ADB** have **AC = BD, AD = BC,** and **AD, BC** meet at **E.** Show that **AE = BE.**

5. On a given base construct a  $\triangle$  having one of the  $\angle$ s at the base equal to a given  $\angle$ , and the sum of the sides equal to a given st. line.

6. On a given base construct a  $\triangle$  having one of the  $\angle$ s at the base equal to a given  $\angle$  and the difference of the sides equal to a given st. line.

7. If the bisector of an exterior  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  be  $\parallel$  to the opposite side, the  $\triangle$  is isosceles.

8. Through a point on the bisector of an  $\angle$  a line is drawn  $\parallel$  to one of the arms. Prove that the  $\triangle$  thus formed is isosceles.

9. A st. line drawn  $\perp$  to **BC**, the base of an isosceles  $\triangle ABC$ , cuts **AB** at **X** and **CA** produced at **Y.** Show that **AXY** is an isosceles  $\triangle$ .

10. **ACB** is a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  having the rt.  $\angle$  at **C.** Through **X**, the middle point of **AC**, **XY** is drawn  $\parallel$  **CB** cutting **AB** at **Y.** Show that **Y** is the middle point of **AB.**

11. The middle point of the hypotenuse of a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  is equidistant from the three vertices.

12. The st. line joining the middle points of two sides of a  $\triangle$  is  $\parallel$  to the third side.

13. Construct a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ , having the hypotenuse equal to one given st. line, and the sum of the other two sides equal to another given st. line.

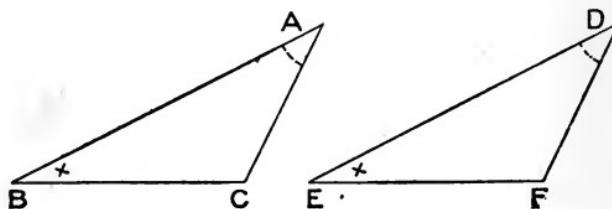
14. If one  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  equals the sum of the other two, show that the  $\triangle$  is a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ .



## THIRD CASE OF THE CONGRUENCE OF TRIANGLES

## THEOREM 14

If two triangles have two angles and a side of one respectively equal to two angles and the corresponding side of the other, the triangles are congruent.



*Hypothesis.*— $\triangle ABC, \triangle DEF$  are two  $\Delta$ s having  $\angle A = \angle D$ ,  $\angle B = \angle E$ , and  $BC = EF$ .

*To prove that*  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$

*Proof.*—  $\because \angle A = \angle D$ ,

and  $\angle B = \angle E$ ,

$$\therefore \angle A + \angle B = \angle D + \angle E.$$

But  $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C = \angle D + \angle E + \angle F$ . (I—10, p. 45.)

$$\therefore \angle C = \angle F.$$

Apply  $\triangle ABC$  to  $\triangle DEF$  so that  $BC$  coincides with the equal side  $EF$ .

$$\because \angle B = \angle E,$$

$\therefore BA$  falls along  $ED$ , and  $A$  is on the line  $ED$ .

$$\because \angle C = \angle F,$$

$\therefore CA$  falls along  $FD$ , and  $A$  is on the line  $FD$ .

But  $D$  is the only point common to  $ED$  and  $FD$ ,

$$\therefore A$$
 falls on  $D$ .

$\therefore \triangle ABC$  coincides with  $\triangle DEF$ ,

and  $\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ .

## 59.—Exercises

- $\times$  1. If the bisector of an  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  be  $\perp$  to the opposite side, the  $\triangle$  is isosceles.
- $\times$  2. Any point in the bisector of an  $\angle$  is equidistant from the arms of the  $\angle$ .
3. In the base of a  $\triangle$  find a point that is equidistant from the two sides.
4. In a given st. line find a point that is equidistant from two other given st. lines.
- $\times$  5. Within a  $\triangle$  find a point that is equally distant from the three sides of the  $\triangle$ .
6. Without a  $\triangle$  find three points each of which is equally distant from the three st. lines that form the  $\triangle$ .
- $\times$  7. The ends of the base of an isosceles  $\triangle$  are equidistant from the opposite sides.
8. Two rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$ s are congruent, if the hypotenuse and an acute  $\angle$  of one are respectively equal to the hypotenuse and an acute  $\angle$  of the other.
9. Construct a  $\triangle$  with a side and two  $\angle$ s respectively equal to a given st. line and two given  $\angle$ s.
10. The  $\perp$  from the vertex of an isosceles  $\triangle$  to the base, bisects the base and the vertical  $\angle$ .
11. Prove I—13 by drawing the bisector of the vertical  $\angle$ , and using I—14.
12.  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$  and  $AX, DY$  are  $\perp$  to  $BC, EF$  respectively. Prove that  $AX = DY$ .
13.  $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$  and  $AM, DN$  bisect  $\angle$ s  $A, D$  and meet  $BC, EF$  at  $M, N$  respectively. Prove that  $AM = DN$ .
14. If the diagonal  $AC$  of a quadrilateral  $ABCD$  bisects the  $\angle$ s at  $A$  and  $C$ ,  $AC$  is an axis of symmetry of  $ABCD$ .
15. The middle point of the base of an isosceles  $\triangle$  is equidistant from the equal sides.

THE AMBIGUOUS CASE IN THE COMPARISON OF  
TRIANGLES

THEOREM 15

If two triangles have two sides of one respectively equal to two sides of the other and have the angles opposite one pair of equal sides equal to each other, the angles opposite the other pair of equal sides are either equal or supplementary.

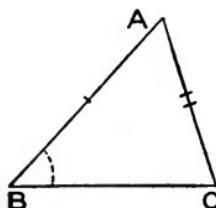


FIG. 1

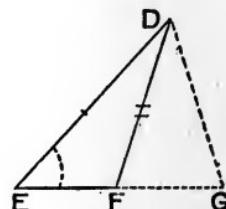
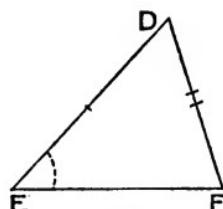


FIG. 2

*Hypothesis.*—ABC, DEF are two  $\triangle$ s having  $AB = DE$ ,  $AC = DF$  and  $\angle B = \angle E$ .

*To prove that either*  $\angle C = \angle F$ ,

*or*  $\angle C + \angle F = \text{two rt. } \angle\text{s}$ .

*Proof.*—**Case I.** Suppose  $\angle A = \angle D$ . (Fig. 1.)

Then in the two  $\triangle$ s ABC, DEF,

$$\because \angle A = \angle D,$$

$$\text{and } \angle B = \angle E,$$

$$\therefore \angle A + \angle B = \angle D + \angle E.$$

But  $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C = \angle D + \angle E + \angle F$ . (I—10, p. 45.)

$$\therefore \angle C = \angle F.$$

**Case II.** Suppose  $\angle A$  not =  $\angle D$ .

(Fig. 2.)

Make  $\angle \text{EDG} = \angle \text{BAC}$ , and produce its arm to meet  $\text{EF}$ , produced if necessary, at  $\text{G}$ .

$$\text{In } \triangle \text{s ABC, DEG, } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle \text{A} = \angle \text{EDG}, \\ \angle \text{B} = \angle \text{E}, \\ \text{AB} = \text{DE}, \end{array} \right. \begin{array}{l} \therefore \angle \text{C} = \angle \text{G}, \\ \text{and AC} = \text{DG}. \end{array} \quad (\text{I}-14, \text{ p. 54.})$$

$$\text{But } \text{DF} = \text{AC}, \quad (\text{Hyp.})$$

$$\therefore \text{DF} = \text{DG}.$$

$$\therefore \angle \text{DFG} = \angle \text{G}. \quad (\text{I}-3, \text{ p. 20.})$$

$$\text{But } \angle \text{C} = \angle \text{G}.$$

$$\therefore \angle \text{C} = \angle \text{DFG}.$$

$$\angle \text{DFG} + \angle \text{DFE} = \text{two rt. } \angle \text{s},$$

$$\therefore \angle \text{C} + \angle \text{DFE} = \text{two rt. } \angle \text{s}.$$

**NOTE.**—There are six parts in a triangle, viz., three sides and three angles, and in the cases in which the congruence of two triangles has been established three parts of one triangle, one at least a side, have been given respectively equal to the corresponding parts of the other.

The following general cases occur:—

1. Two sides and the contained angle. The triangles are congruent—Theorem 2.
2. Three sides. The triangles are congruent—Theorem 4.
3. Two angles and a side. The triangles are congruent—Theorem 14.
4. Two sides and an angle opposite one of them. In this case the triangles are congruent if the angle is opposite the greater of the two sides—§ 60, Ex. 3, but

if the angle is opposite the less of the two sides, they are not necessarily congruent—Theorem 15.

5. Three angles. The triangles are not necessarily congruent—§ 60, Ex. 7.

### 60.—Exercises

1. If two rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$ s have the hypotenuse and a side of one respectively equal to the hypotenuse and a side of the other, the  $\triangle$ s are congruent.

2. If the bisector of the vertical  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  also bisects the base, the  $\triangle$  is isosceles.

3. If two  $\triangle$ s have two sides of one respectively equal to two sides of the other and the  $\angle$ s opposite the greater pair of equal sides equal to each other, the  $\triangle$ s are congruent.

4. Construct a  $\triangle$  having given two sides and the  $\angle$  opposite one of them.

When will there be : (a) no solution, (b) two solutions, (c) only one solution ?

5. If two  $\angle$ s of a  $\triangle$  be bisected and the bisectors be produced to meet, the line joining the point of intersection to the vertex of the third  $\angle$  bisects that third  $\angle$ . Hence.—The bisectors of the three  $\angle$ s of a  $\triangle$  pass through one point.

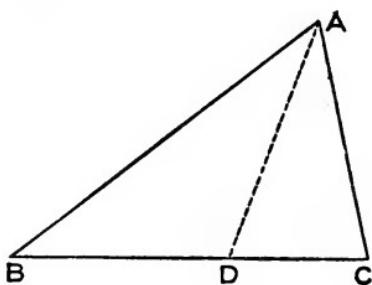
6. If two exterior  $\angle$ s of a  $\triangle$  be bisected and the bisectors be produced to meet, the line joining the point of intersection of the bisectors to the vertex of the third  $\angle$  of the  $\triangle$  bisects that third  $\angle$ .

7. Draw diagrams to show that if the three  $\angle$ s of one  $\triangle$  are respectively equal to the three  $\angle$ s of another  $\triangle$ , the two  $\triangle$ s are not necessarily congruent.

## INEQUALITIES

## THEOREM 16

Any two sides of a triangle are together greater than the third side.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a  $\triangle$ .

*To prove that*  $AB + AC > BC$ .

*Construction.*—Bisect  $\angle A$  and let the bisector meet  $BC$  at  $D$ .

*Proof.*— $ADC$  is an exterior  $\angle$  of  $\triangle ABD$ ,

$$\therefore \angle ADC > \angle BAD. \quad (\text{I}-10, \text{Cor., p. 45.})$$

But  $\angle BAD = \angle DAC$ .

$$\therefore \angle ADC > \angle DAC.$$

$$\therefore AC > DC. \quad (\text{I}-12, \text{p. 50.})$$

Similarly it may be shown that

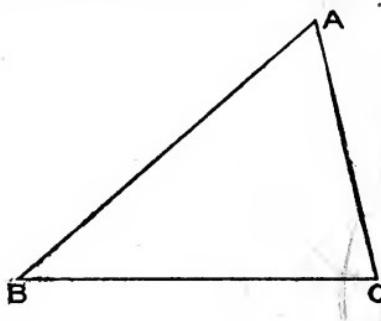
$$AB > BD.$$

$$\therefore AB + AC > BD + DC,$$

$$\text{i.e., } AB + AC > BC.$$

In the same manner it may be shown that  $AB + BC > AC$  and that  $AC + CB > AB$ .

**Cor.**—The difference between any two sides of a triangle is less than the third side.



**ABC** is a  $\triangle$ .

It is required to show that  $AB - AC < BC$ .

$$AB < AC + BC. \quad (\text{I}-16, \text{p. 59.})$$

From each of these unequals take  $AC$ ,

$$\text{and } AB - AC < BC.$$

In the same manner it may be shown that  $AB - BC < AC$  and that  $BC - AC < AB$ .

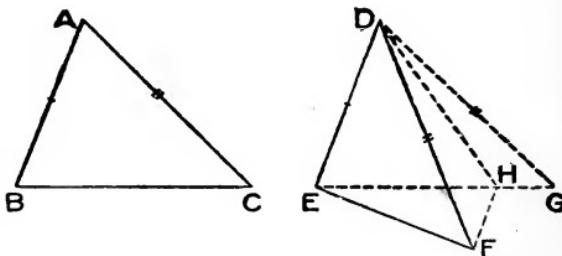
### 61.—Exercises

1. Show that the sum of any three sides of a quadrilateral is greater than the fourth side.
2. The sum of the four sides of a quadrilateral is greater than the sum of its diagonals.
3. The sum of the diagonals of a quadrilateral is greater than the sum of either pair of opposite sides.
4. The sum of the st. lines joining any point, except the intersection of the diagonals, to the four vertices of a quadrilateral, is greater than the sum of the diagonals.
5. If any point within a  $\triangle$  be joined to the ends of a side of the  $\triangle$ , the sum of the joining lines is less than the sum of the other two sides of the  $\triangle$ .

6. If any point within a  $\triangle$  be joined to the three vertices of the  $\triangle$ , the sum of the three joining lines is less than the perimeter of the  $\triangle$ , but greater than half the perimeter.
  7. The sum of any two sides of a  $\triangle$  is greater than twice the median drawn to the third side.
  8. The median of a  $\triangle$  divides the vertical  $\angle$  into parts, of which the greater is adjacent to the less side.
  9. The perimeter of a  $\triangle$  is greater than the sum of the three medians.
  10. A and B are two fixed points, and CD is a fixed st. line. Find the point P in CD, such that  $PA + PB$  is the least possible ;
    - (a) When A and B are on opposite sides of CD;
    - (b) When A and B are on the same side of CD.
  11. A and B are two fixed points, and CD is a fixed st. line. Find the point P in CD, such that the difference between PA and PB is the least possible ;
    - (a) When A and B are on the same side of CD;
    - (b) When A and B are on opposite sides of CD.
  12. Prove Theorem 16 by producing BA to E, making  $AE = AC$ , and joining EC.
  13. Prove that the shortest line which can be drawn with its ends on the circumferences of two concentric circles, will, when produced, pass through the centre.
  14. Prove the Corollary under Theorem 16, (a) by cutting off from AB a part  $AD = AC$  and joining DC; (b) by producing AC to E making  $AE = AB$  and joining BE.
-

## THEOREM 17

If two triangles have two sides of one respectively equal to two sides of the other but the contained angle in one greater than the contained angle in the other, the base of the triangle which has the greater angle is greater than the base of the other.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC, DEF are two  $\triangle$ s having  $AB = DE$ ,  $AC = DF$  and  $\angle BAC > \angle EDF$ .

*To show that*  $BC > EF$ .

*Construction.*—Make  $\angle EDG = \angle BAC$  and cut off  $DG = AC$ , or  $DF$ . Join  $EG$ . Bisect  $\angle FDG$  and let the bisector meet  $EG$  at  $H$ . Join  $FH$ .

*Proof.*—

$$\text{In } \triangle s ABC, DEG, \left\{ \begin{array}{l} AB = DE, \\ AC = DG, \\ \angle A = \angle EDG, \end{array} \right. \therefore BC = EG. \quad (\text{I--2, p. 16.})$$

$$\text{In } \triangle s FDH, GDH, \left\{ \begin{array}{l} DF = DG, \\ DH \text{ is common,} \\ \angle FDH = \angle GDH, \end{array} \right. \therefore FH = HG.$$

$$\text{In } \triangle EHF, EH + HF > EF. \quad (\text{I--16, p. 59.})$$

But  $HF = HG,$

$\therefore EH + HG > EF.$

i.e.,  $EG > EF.$

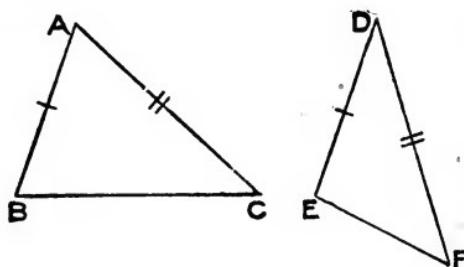
But  $BC = EG,$

$\therefore BC > EF.$

## THEOREM 18

(Converse of Theorem 17)

If two triangles have two sides of one respectively equal to two sides of the other but the base of one greater than the base of the other, the triangle which has the greater base has the greater vertical angle.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC, DEF are two  $\triangle$ s having  $AB = DE$ ,  $AC = DF$  and  $BC > EF$ .

*To prove that*  $\angle A > \angle D$ .

*Proof.*— If  $\angle A$  is not  $>$   $\angle D$ ,

either  $\angle A = \angle D$ ,

or  $\angle A < \angle D$ .

(1) If  $\angle A = \angle D$ .

In  $\triangle$ s ABC, DEF,  $\begin{cases} AB = DE, \\ AC = DF, \\ \angle A = \angle D, \end{cases}$   
 $\therefore BC = EF$ . (I—2, p. 16.)

But this is not so.

$\therefore \angle A$  is not  $= \angle D$ .

(2) If  $\angle A < \angle D$ .

In  $\triangle s ABC, DEF$ ,  $\begin{cases} AB = DE, \\ AC = DF, \\ \angle A < \angle D, \end{cases}$   
 $\therefore BC < EF.$  (I—17, p. 62.)

But this is not so.

$\therefore \angle A$  is not  $< \angle D$ .

Then since  $\angle A$  is neither  $=$  nor  $< \angle D$ ,

$\therefore \angle A > \angle D$ .

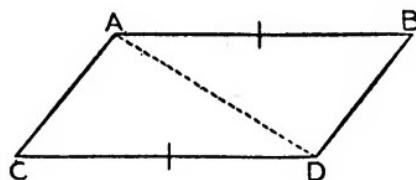
### 62.—Exercises

1. **ABCD** is a quadrilateral having  $AB = CD$  and  $\angle BAD > \angle ADC$ . Show that  $\angle BCD > \angle ABC$ .
2. In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB > AC$  and **D** is the middle point of **BC**. If any point **P** in the median **AD** be joined to **B** and **C**,  $BP > CP$ .
- If **AD** be produced to any point **Q** show that  $BQ < QC$ .
3. **D** is a point in the side **AB** of the  $\triangle ABC$ . **AC** is produced to **E** making  $CE = BD$ . **BE** and **CD** are joined. Show that  $BE > CD$ .
- 
4. If two chords of a circle be unequal the greater subtends the greater angle at the centre.
5. Two circles have a common centre at **O**. **A, B** are two points on the inner circumference and **C, D** two on the outer.  $\angle AOC > \angle BOD$ . Show that  $AC > BD$ .
6. **CD** bisects **AB** at rt.  $\angle$ s. A point **E** is taken not in **CD**. Prove that **EA, EB** are unequal.
7. In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB > AC$ . Equal distances **BD, CE** are cut off from **BA, CA** respectively. Prove  $BE > CD$ .
8. In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AB > AC$ . **AB, AC** are produced to **D, E** making  $BD = CE$ . Prove  $CD > BE$ .

## PARALLELOGRAMS

## THEOREM 19

Straight lines which join the ends of two equal and parallel straight lines towards the same parts are themselves equal and parallel.



*Hypothesis.*— $AB$ ,  $CD$  are = and  $\parallel$ .

*To prove that* (1)  $AC = BD$ ,

(2)  $AC \parallel BD$ .

*Construction.*—Join  $AD$ .

*Proof.*—

$$\because AB \parallel CD,$$

and  $AD$  is a transversal,

$$\therefore \angle BAD = \angle CDA. \quad (\text{I--8, p. 40.})$$

In  $\triangle s$   $BAD$ ,  $CDA$ ,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} BA = CD, \\ AD \text{ is common,} \\ \angle BAD = \angle CDA, \\ \therefore BD = AC, \end{array} \right\}$  and  $\angle BDA = \angle CAD$ , }  $(\text{I--2, p. 16.})$

$\therefore$  transversal  $AD$

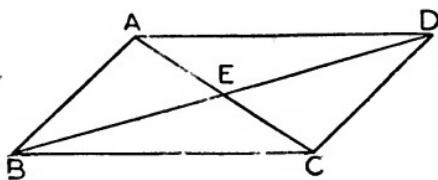
makes  $\angle BDA = \angle CAD$ ,

$$\therefore BD \parallel AC. \quad (\text{I--6, p. 36.})$$

## THEOREM 20

In any parallelogram :

- (1) The opposite sides are equal;
- (2) The opposite angles are equal;
- (3) The diagonal bisects the area;
- (4) The diagonals bisect each other.



*Hypothesis.*—ABCD is a ||gm, AC, BD its diagonals.

*To prove that* (1)  $AD = BC$  and  $AB = CD$ .

- (2)  $\angle BAD = \angle BCD$  and  $\angle ABC = \angle ADC$ .
- (3)  $\triangle ABC = \triangle ACD$ .
- (4)  $AE = EC$  and  $BE = ED$ .

*Proof.*— $\because$  AC cuts || lines AD, BC,

$$\therefore \angle DAC = \angle ACB. \quad (\text{I--8, p. 40.})$$

$\because$  AC cuts || lines DC, AB,

$$\therefore \angle DCA = \angle CAB.$$

In  $\triangle s$  ACD, ACB,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle DAC = \angle ACB, \\ \angle DCA = \angle CAB, \\ AC \text{ is common,} \end{array} \right.$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} (1) AD = BC, \text{ and } CD = AB, \\ (2) \text{ also } \angle ADC = \angle ABC, \\ (3) \text{ and } \triangle ADC = \triangle ABC. \end{array} \right\} (\text{I--14, p. 54.})$$

Similarly it may be shown that  $\angle BAD = \angle BCD$ .

In  $\triangle s$  AED, BEC,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} AD = BC, \\ \angle DAE = \angle BCE, \\ \angle ADE = \angle CBE, \\ (4) \quad \therefore AE = EC, \\ \text{and } DE = EB. \end{array} \right\}$  (I--14, p. 54.)

**63. Definitions.**—A parallelogram of which the angles are right angles is called a **rectangle**.

A rectangle of which all the sides are equal to each other is called a **square**.

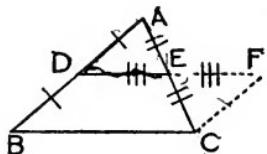
A figure bounded by more than four straight lines is called a **polygon**.

The name polygon is sometimes used for a figure having any number of sides.

A polygon in which all the sides are equal to each other and all the angles are equal to each other is called a **regular polygon**.

#### 64.—Exercises

1. The diagonals of a rectangle are equal to each other.
2. If the diagonals of a ||gm are equal to each other, the ||gm is a rectangle.
3. A rectangle has two axes of symmetry.
4. A square has four axes of symmetry.

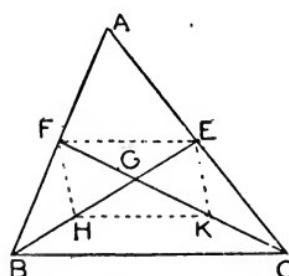


5. The st. line joining the middle points of the sides of a  $\triangle$  is  $\parallel$  the base, and equal to half of it.

NOTE.—D, E are the middle points of AB, AC. Produce DE to F making  $EF = DE$ . Join FC.

6. Of two medians of a  $\triangle$  each cuts the other at the point of trisection remote from the vertex.

NOTE.—Medians BE, CF cut at G. Bisect BG, CG at H, K. Join FH, HK, KE, EF.



7. The medians of a  $\triangle$  pass through one point.

**Definition.**—The point where the medians of a  $\triangle$  intersect is called the centroid of the  $\triangle$ .

8. A st. line drawn through the middle point of one side of a  $\triangle$ ,  $\parallel$  to a second side, bisects the third side.

9. In any  $\parallel$ gm the diagonal which joins the vertices of the obtuse  $\angle$ s is shorter than the other diagonal.

10. If two sides of a quadrilateral be  $\parallel$ , and the other two be equal to each other but not  $\parallel$ , the diagonals of the quadrilateral are equal.

11. Through a given point draw a st. line, such that the part of it intercepted between two given  $\parallel$  st. lines is equal to a given st. line.

Show that, in general, two such lines can be drawn.

12. Through a given point draw a st. line that shall be equidistant from two other given points.

Show that, in general, two such lines can be drawn.

13. Draw a st. line  $\parallel$  to a given st. line, and such that the part of it intercepted between two given intersecting lines is equal to a given st. line.

14.  $BAC$  is a given  $\angle$ , and  $P$  is a given point. Draw a st. line terminated in the st. lines  $AB$ ,  $AC$  and bisected at  $P$ .

15. Construct a  $\triangle$  having given the middle points of the three sides.

16. If the diagonals of a  $\parallel$ gm cut each other at rt.  $\angle$ s, the  $\parallel$ gm is a rhombus.

17. Every st. line drawn through the intersection of the diagonals of a  $\parallel$ gm, and terminated by a pair of opposite sides, is bisected, and bisects the  $\parallel$ gm.

18. Bisect a given  $\parallel$ gm by a st. line drawn through a given point.

19. Divide a given  $\triangle$  into four congruent  $\triangle$ s.

× 20. The bisectors of two opposite ∠s of a ||gm are || to each other.

× 21. In the quadrilateral ABCD, AB || CD and AD = BC. Prove that (1) ∠C = ∠D; (2) if E, F are the middle points of AB, CD respectively, EF ⊥ AB.

22. On a given st. line construct a square.

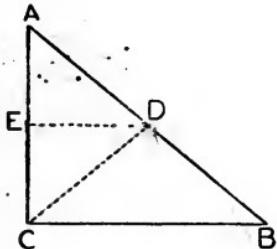
23. Construct a square having its diagonal equal to a given st. line.

× 24. ABC is a △ and DE a st. line. Draw a st. line = DE, || BC and terminated in AB, AC, or in these lines produced.

× 25. Inscribe a rhombus in a given ||gm, such that one vertex of the rhombus is at a given point in a side of the ||gm.

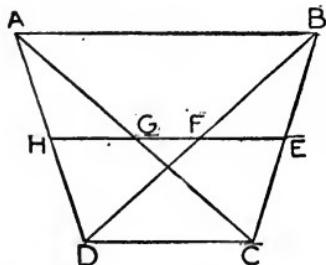
26. ABC is an isosceles △ in which AB = AC. From P, any point in BC, PX, PY are drawn ⊥ AB, AC respectively and BM is ⊥ AC. Prove that PX + PY = BM.

If P is taken on CB produced, prove that PY - PX = BM.



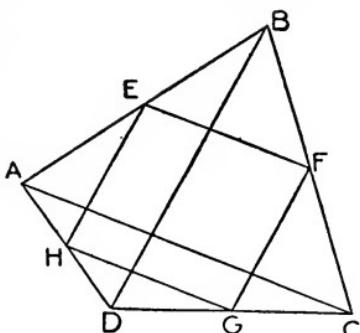
27. The middle point of the hypotenuse of a rt.-∠d △ is equidistant from the three vertices.

NOTE.—Through D, the middle point of the hypotenuse AB, draw DE || BC. Join DC.



28. ABCD is a quadrilateral in which AB || CD. E, F, G, H are the middle points of BC, BD, AC, AD. Prove that: (1) the st. line through E || AB, or DC, passes through F, G and H; (2) HE = half the sum of AB and DC; (3) GF = half the difference of AB and DC.

29. **E, F, G, H** are the middle points of the sides **AB, BC, CD, DA** of the quadrilateral **ABCD**. Prove that **EFGH** is a ||gm. Show also that: (1) the perimeter of **EFGH** = **AC + BD**; (2) if **AC = BD**, **EFGH** is a rhombus; (3) if **AC ⊥ BD**, **EFGH** is a rectangle; (4) if **AC = and ⊥ BD**, **EFGH** is a square.



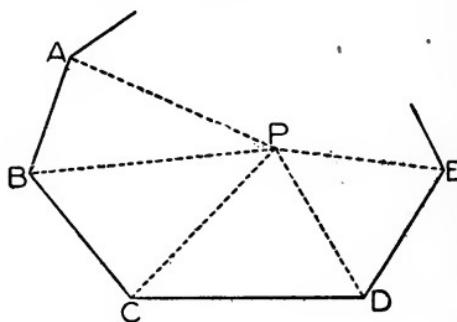
30. The middle points of a pair of opposite sides of a quadrilateral and the middle points of the diagonals are the vertices of a ||gm.

31. The st. lines joining the middle points of the opposite sides of a quadrilateral and the st. line joining the middle points of the diagonals are concurrent.



## THEOREM 21

The sum of the interior angles of a polygon of  $n$  sides is  $(2n - 4)$  right angles.



*Hypothesis.*—ABCDE, etc., is a closed polygon of  $n$  sides.

*To prove that* the sum of the interior angles is  $(2n - 4)$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

*Construction.*—Take any point P within the polygon and join P to the vertices.

*Proof.*—The polygon is divided into  $n$   $\triangle$ s PAB, PBC, PCD, etc.

The sum of the interior  $\angle$ s of each  $\triangle$  is two rt.  $\angle$ s. (I—10, p. 45.)

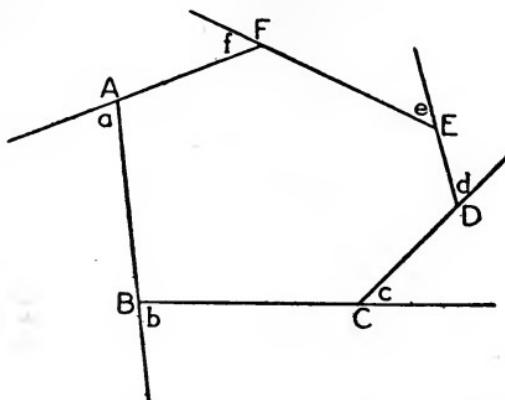
$\therefore$  the sum of the  $\angle$ s of the  $n$   $\triangle$ s is  $2n$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

But the  $\angle$ s of the  $n$   $\triangle$ s make up the interior  $\angle$ s of the polygon together with the  $\angle$ s about the point P.

And the sum of the  $\angle$ s about P equals 4 rt.  $\angle$ s.

$\therefore$  the sum of the interior  $\angle$ s of the polygon =  $(2n - 4)$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

**Cor.**—If the sides of a polygon are produced in order, the sum of the exterior angles thus formed is four right angles.



If the polygon has  $n$  sides, the sum of all the st.  $\angle$ s at the vertices =  $2n$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

But, the sum of the interior  $\angle$ s =  $(2n - 4)$  rt.  $\angle$ s.  
(I—21, p. 72.)

∴, subtracting,  $\angle a + \angle b + \text{etc.} = 4$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

### 65.—Exercises

- Find the number of degrees in an exterior  $\angle$  of an equiangular polygon of twelve sides.

Hence, find the number of degrees in each interior  $\angle$ .

- Find the number of degrees in each  $\angle$  of (a) an equiangular pentagon; (b) an equiangular hexagon; (c) an equiangular octagon; (d) an equiangular decagon.

- Each  $\angle$  of an equiangular polygon contains  $162^\circ$ . Find the number of sides.

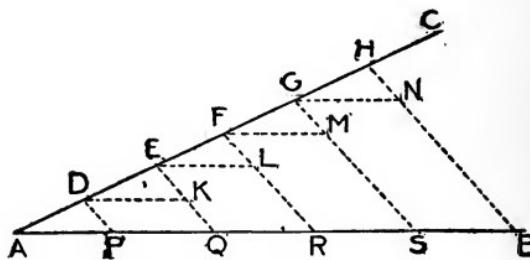
- Each  $\angle$  of an equiangular polygon contains  $170^\circ$ . Find the number of sides.

- Show that the space around a point may be exactly filled in by six equilateral  $\triangle$ s, four squares, or three equiangular hexagons. Draw the diagram in each case.

## CONSTRUCTION

## PROBLEM 8

To divide a straight line into any number of equal parts.



Let  $AB$  be the given st. line.

To divide  $AB$  into five equal parts.

*Construction.*—From  $A$  draw a st. line  $AC$ .

From  $AC$  cut off five equal parts  $AD, DE, EF, FG, GH$ .

Join  $HB$ .

Through  $D, E, F, G$  draw lines  $\parallel HB$  cutting  $AB$  at  $P, Q, R, S$ .

$AB$  is divided into five equal parts at  $P, Q, R, S$ .

*Proof.*—Through  $D, E, F, G$  draw  $DK, EL, FM, GN \parallel AB$ .

$\because AE$  cuts the parallels  $AP, DK$ ,

$\therefore \angle EDK = \angle DAP.$  (I—9, p. 42.)

$\because AE$  cuts the parallels  $DP, EQ$ ,

$\therefore \angle ADP = \angle DEQ.$

In  $\triangle s ADP, DEK,$   $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle DAP = \angle EDK, \\ \angle ADP = \angle DEK, \\ AD = DE, \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore AP = DK$  (I—14, p. 54.)

But  $PQ = DK.$  (I—20, p. 67.)

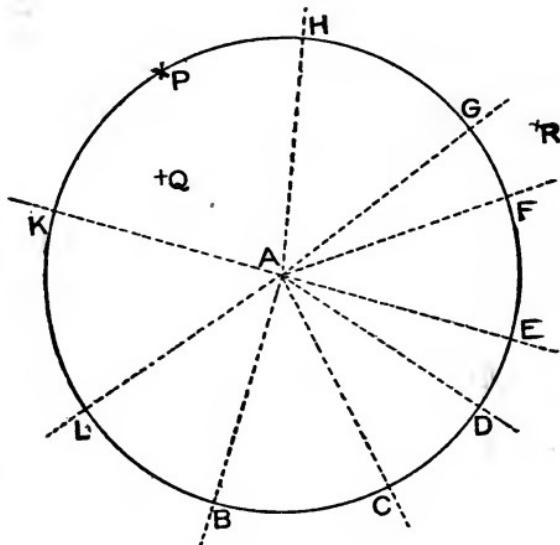
$\therefore PQ = AP.$

Similarly it may be shown that each of  $QR$ ,  $RS$ ,  $SB = AP$ .

By this method a st. line may be divided into any number of equal parts.

### Loci

66. **Example 1.**—**A** is a point and from **A** straight lines are drawn in different directions in the same plane.



On each line a distance of one inch is measured from **A** and the resulting points are **B**, **C**, **D**, etc.

Is there any one line that contains all of the points in the plane that are at a distance of one inch from **A**?

To answer this question describe a circle with centre **A** and radius one inch. The circumference of this circle is a line that passes through all the points.

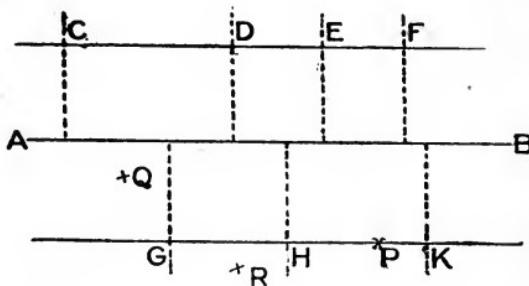
Mark any other point **P** on the circumference. What is the distance of **P** from **A**? From the definition of a circle the answer to this question is one inch.

If any point **Q** be taken within the circle, its distance from **A** is less than one inch, and if any point **R** be taken without the circle, its distance from **A** is greater than one inch.

Thus every point in the circumference satisfies the condition of being just one inch from **A**, and no point, in the plane, that is not on the circumference does satisfy this condition.

This circumference is called the **locus** of all points in the plane that are at a distance of one inch from **A**.

**Example 2:**—**AB** is a straight line of indefinite length, to which any number of perpendiculars are drawn.



On each of these perpendiculars a distance of one centimetre is measured from **AB**, and the resulting points are **C, D, E, etc.**

Are there any lines that contain all of the points, such as **C, D, etc.**, that are at a distance of one centimetre from **AB**?

Draw two straight lines parallel to **AB**, each at a distance of one centimetre from **AB**, and one or other of these lines will pass through each of the points.

Any point **P** in **CF**, or in **GK**, is at a distance of one centimetre from **AB**; any point **Q** in the space between **CF** and **GK** is less than one centimetre from **AB**, and any point **R** in the plane and neither between **CF** and **GK** nor in one of these lines is more than one centimetre from **AB**.

Thus every point in **CF** and **GK** satisfies the condition of being just one centimetre from **AB**, and no point outside of these lines and in the plane does satisfy this condition.

The two lines **GF**, **GK** make up the **locus** of all points in the plane that are at a distance of one centimetre from **AB**.

**Definition.**—When a figure consisting of a line or lines contains all the points that satisfy a given condition, and no others, this figure is called the **locus** of these points.

67. In place of speaking of the "locus of the points which satisfy a given condition," the alternative expression "locus of the point which satisfies a given condition" may be used.

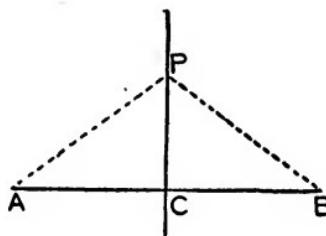
Suppose a point to move in a plane so that it traces out a continuous line, but its distance from a fixed point **A** in the plane is always one inch; then it must move on the circumference of the circle of centre **A** and radius one inch, and the locus of the point in its different positions is that circumference.

The following definition of a locus may thus be given as an alternative to that in § 66.

**Definition.**—If a point moves on a line, or on lines, so that it constantly satisfies a given condition, the figure consisting of the line, or lines, is the locus of the point.

### THEOREM 22

The locus of a point which is equidistant from two given points is the right bisector of the straight line joining the two given points.



*Hypothesis.*—P is a point equidistant from A and B.

*To prove that P is on the right bisector of AB.*

*Construction.*—Bisect AB at C.

Join PC, PA, PB.

*Proof.*—

In  $\triangle s$  PAC, PBC,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} PA = PB, \\ AC = CB, \\ PC \text{ is common,} \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \triangle PAC \equiv \triangle PCB, \quad (\text{I--4, p. 22.})$$

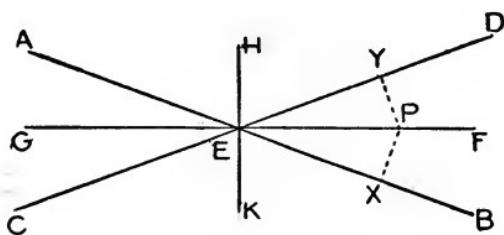
$$\therefore \angle PCA = \angle PCB,$$

and  $\therefore$  P is on the right bisector of AB.

Wrong - J.W.  
 LOCI May 8/79

THEOREM 23 Do same as Th.

The locus of a point which is equidistant from two given intersecting straight lines is the pair of straight lines which bisect the angles between the two straight lines.



*Hypothesis.* — **AB, CD** are two st. lines cutting at **E**; **GF, HK** are the bisectors of  $\angle$ s made by **AB, CD**.

*To prove that the locus of a point equidistant from **AB**, and **CD** consists of **GF** and **HK**.*

*Construction.* — Take any point **P** in **GF**. Draw **PX**  $\perp$  **AB**, **PY**  $\perp$  **CD**.

*Proof.* —

In  $\triangle$ s **PEX, PEY**,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle PEX = \angle PEY, \\ \angle PXE = \angle PYE, \\ PE \text{ is common,} \end{array} \right.$   
 $\therefore PX = PY.$  (I—14, p. 54.)

$\therefore$  every point in **GF** is equidistant from **AB** and **CD**.

Similarly it may be shown that every point in **HK** is equidistant from **AB** and **CD**.

$\therefore$  the locus of points equidistant from **AB, CD** consists of **GF** and **HK**.

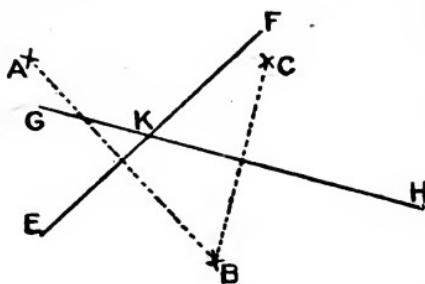
There may be other points as

68. Problem:—To find the point that is equally distant from three given points, that are not in the same straight line.

Let **A**, **B**, **C** be the three given points.

It is required to find a point equally distant from **A**, **B** and **C**.

Draw **EF** the locus of all points that are equally distant from **A** and **B**. (I—22, p. 78.)



Draw **GH** the locus of all points that are equally distant from **B** and **C**.

Let **EF** and **GH** meet at **K**.

Then **K** is the required point.

**K** is on **EF**,  $\therefore KA = KB$ .

**K** is on **GH**,  $\therefore KB = KC$ .

Consequently **K** is equally distant from **A**, **B** and **C**.

### 69.—Exercises

- Find the locus of the centres of all circles that pass through two given points.
- Describe a circle to pass through two given points and have its centre in a given st. line.
- Describe a circle to pass through two given points and have its radius equal to a given st. line. Show that

generally two such circles may be described. When will there be only one? and when none?

4. Find the locus of a point which is equidistant from two given  $\parallel$  st. lines.

5. In a given st. line find two points each of which is equally distant from two given intersecting st. lines.

When will there be only one solution?

6. Find the locus of the vertices of all  $\Delta$ s on a given base which have the medians drawn to the base equal to a given st. line.

7. Find the locus of the vertices of all  $\Delta$ s on a given base which have one side equal to a given st. line.

8. Construct a  $\Delta$  having given the base, the median drawn to the base, and the length of one side.

9. Find the locus of the vertices of all  $\Delta$ s on a given base which have a given altitude.

10. Construct a  $\Delta$  having given the base, the median drawn to the base, and the altitude.

11. Construct a  $\Delta$  having given the base, the altitude and one side.

12. Find the locus of a point such that the sum of its distances from two given intersecting st. lines is equal to a given st. line.

13. Find the locus of a point such that the difference of its distances from two given intersecting st. lines is equal to a given st. line.

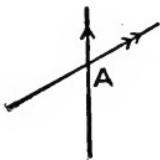
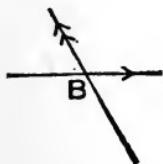
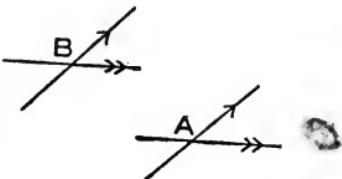
14. Find the locus of the vertices of all  $\Delta$ s on a given base which have the median drawn from one end of the base equal to a given st. line.

15. Show that, if the ends of a st. line of constant length slide along two st. lines at rt.  $\angle$ s to each other, the locus of its middle point is a circle.
16. **AB** is a st. line and **C** is a point at a distance of 2 cm. from **AB**. Find a point which is 1 cm. from **AB** and 4 cm. from **C**. How many such points can be found?
17. Two st. lines, **AB**, **CD**, intersect each other at an  $\angle$  of  $45^\circ$ . Find all the points that are 3 cm. from **AB** and 2 cm. from **CD**.
18. **ABC** is a scalene  $\triangle$ . Find a point equidistant from **AB** and **AC**, and also equidistant from **B** and **C**.
19. Find a point equidistant from the three vertices of a given  $\triangle$ .
20. Find four points each of which is equidistant from the three sides of a  $\triangle$ .
- NOTE.**—*Produce each side in both directions.*
21. Find the locus of a point at which two equal segments of a st. line subtend equal  $\angle$ s.
22. Find the locus of the centre of a circle which shall pass through a given point and have its radius equal to a given st. line.
23. A st. line of constant length remains always  $\parallel$  to itself, while one of its extremities describes the circumference of a fixed circle. Find the locus of the other extremity.
24. The locus of the middle points of all st. lines drawn from a fixed point to the circumference of a fixed circle is a circle.
-

### Miscellaneous Exercises

1. If a st. line be terminated by two  $\parallel$ s, all st. lines drawn through its middle point and terminated by the same  $\parallel$ s are bisected at that point.

2. If two lines intersecting at A be respectively  $\parallel$  to two lines intersecting at B, each  $\angle$  at A is either equal to or supplementary to each  $\angle$  at B.



3. If two lines intersecting at A be respectively  $\perp$  to two lines intersecting at B, each  $\angle$  at A is either equal to or supplementary to each  $\angle$  at B.

4. If from any point in the bisector of an  $\angle$  st. lines be drawn  $\parallel$  to the arms of the  $\angle$  and terminated by the arms, these st. lines are equal to each other.

**X** 5. In the base of a  $\Delta$  find a point such that the st. lines drawn from that point  $\parallel$  to the sides of the  $\Delta$  and terminated by the sides are equal to each other.

6. One  $\angle$  of an isosceles  $\Delta$  is half each of the others. Calculate the  $\angle$ s.

7. If the  $\perp$  from the vertex of a  $\Delta$  to the base falls within the  $\Delta$ , the segment of the base adjacent to the greater side of the  $\Delta$  is the greater.

**X** 8. If a star-shaped figure be formed by producing the alternate sides of a polygon of  $n$  sides, the sum of the  $\angle$ s at the points of the star is  $(2n - 8)$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

**X** 9. In a quadrilateral ABCD,  $\angle A = \angle B$  and  $\angle C = \angle D$ . Prove that  $AD = BC$ .

10. The bisectors of the  $\angle$ s of a ||gm form a rectangle, the diagonals of which are  $\parallel$  to the sides of the original ||gm ; and equal to the difference between them.
11. From **A**, **B** the ends of a st. line  $\perp$ s **AC**, **BD** are drawn to any st. line. **E** is the middle point of **AB**. Show that  $EC = ED$ .
- ~~x~~ 12. If through a point within a  $\triangle$  three st. lines be drawn from the vertices to the opposite sides, the sum of these st. lines is greater than half the perimeter of the  $\triangle$ .
13. **A**, **D** are the centres of two circles, and **AB**, **DE** are two  $\parallel$  radii. **EB** cuts the circumferences again at **C**, **F**. Show that  $AC \parallel DF$ .
- ~~x~~ 14. The bisectors of the interior  $\angle$ s of a quadrilateral form a quadrilateral of which the opposite  $\angle$ s are supplementary.
15. In a given square inscribe an equilateral  $\triangle$  having one vertex at a vertex of the square.
16. Through two given points draw two st. lines, forming an equilateral  $\triangle$  with a given st. line.
17. Draw an isosceles  $\triangle$  having its base in a given st. line, its altitude equal to a given st. line, and its equal sides passing through two given points.
18. If a  $\perp$  be drawn from one end of the base of an isosceles  $\triangle$  to the opposite side, the  $\angle$  between the  $\perp$  and the base = half the vertical  $\angle$  of the  $\triangle$ .
- ~~x~~ 19. If any point **P** in **AD** the bisector of the  $\angle A$  of  $\triangle ABC$  be joined to **B** and **C**, the difference between **PB** and **PC** is less than the difference between **AB** and **AC**.
- ~~x~~ 20. If any point **P** in the bisector of the exterior  $\angle$  at **A** in the  $\triangle ABC$  be joined to **B** and **C**,  $PB + PC > AB + AC$ .

21.  $\angle BAC$  is a rt.  $\angle$  and  $D$  is any point.  $DE$  is drawn  $\perp AB$  and produced to  $F$ , making  $EF = DE$ .  $DG$  is drawn  $\perp AC$  and produced to  $H$ , making  $GH = DG$ . Show that  $F, A, H$  are in the same st. line.

22. Construct a  $\triangle$  having its perimeter equal to a given st. line and its  $\angle$ s respectively equal to the  $\angle$ s of a given  $\triangle$ .

23. In any quadrilateral, the sum of the exterior  $\angle$ s at one pair of opposite vertices = the sum of the interior  $\angle$ s at the other vertices.

24. If the arms of one  $\angle$  be respectively  $\parallel$  to the arms of another  $\angle$ , the bisectors of the  $\angle$ s are either  $\parallel$  or  $\perp$ .

25. In a given  $\triangle$  inscribe a ||gm the diagonals of which intersect at a given point.

26. Show that the  $\perp$ s from the centre of a circle to two equal chords are equal to each other.

27. Construct a quadrilateral having its sides equal to four given st. lines and one  $\angle$  equal to a given  $\angle$ .

28. The bisector of  $\angle A$  of  $\triangle ABC$  meets  $BC$  at  $D$  and  $BC$  is produced to  $E$ . Show that  $\angle ABC + \angle ACE = \text{twice } \angle ADC$ .

29. The bisectors of  $\angle$ s  $A$  and  $B$  of  $\triangle ABC$  intersect at  $D$ . Show that  $\angle ADB = 90^\circ + \text{half of } \angle C$ .

30. The sides  $AB, AC$  of a  $\triangle ABC$  are bisected at  $D, E$ ; and  $BE, CD$  are produced to  $F, G$ , so that  $EF = BE$  and  $DG = CD$ . Show that  $F, A, G$  are in the same st. line, and that  $FA = AG$ .

31.  $ABC$  is an isosceles  $\triangle$ , having  $AB = AC$ .  $AE, AD$  are equal parts cut off from  $AB, AC$  respectively.  $BD, CE$  cut at  $F$ . Show that  $FBC$  and  $FDE$  are isosceles  $\triangle$ s.

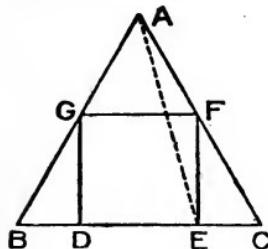
32. In a  $\triangle ABC$ , the bisector of  $\angle A$  and the right bisector of  $BC$  meet at D. DE, DF are drawn  $\perp AB, AC$  respectively. Show that the point D is not within the  $\triangle$ , that  $AE = AF$  and that  $BE = CF$ .

$\times$  33. ABCD is a quadrilateral having  $\angle B = \angle C$  and  $AB < CD$ . Prove that  $\angle A > \angle D$ .

34. Through a given point draw a st. line cutting two intersecting st. lines and forming an isosceles  $\triangle$  with them.

Show that two such lines can be drawn through the given point.

35. If  $ACB$  be a st. line and  $ACD, BCD$  two adjacent  $\angle$ s, any  $\parallel$  to  $AB$  will meet the bisectors of these  $\angle$ s in points equally distant from where it meets  $CD$ .



36. Inscribe a square in a given equilateral  $\triangle$ .

NOTE.—Draw a sketch as in the diagram given here. Join AE.

What is the number of degrees in  $\angle CAE$ ?

37. ABC is a  $\triangle$ , AX is  $\perp BC$ , and AD bisects  $\angle BAC$ . Show that  $\angle XAD$  equals half the difference of  $\angle$ s B and C.

38. Construct a  $\parallel gm$  having its diagonals and a side respectively equal to three given st. lines.

39. Find a point in each of two  $\parallel$  st. lines such that the two points are equally distant from a given point and the st. line joining them subtends a rt.  $\angle$  at the given point.

40. P, Q are two given points on the same side of a given st. line BC. Find the position of a point A in BC such that  $\angle PAB = \angle QAC$ .

NOTE.—If P, Q are two points on a billiard table and BC the side of the table, a ball starting from P and reflected from BC at A would pass through Q.

41. Find the path of a billiard ball which, starting from a given point, is reflected from the four sides of the table and passes through another given point.

42.  $BAC$  is a given  $\angle$  and  $D, E$  are two given st. lines. Find a point  $P$  such that its distances from  $AB, AC$  equal  $D, E$  respectively.

43. Find in a side of a  $\triangle$  a point such that the sum of the two st. lines drawn from the point  $\parallel$  to the other sides and terminated by them is equal to a given st. line.

44.  $AEB, CED$  are two st. lines, and each of the quadrilaterals  $CEAF, BEDG$  is a rhombus. Prove that  $FEG$  is a st. line.

45.  $F$  is a point within the  $\triangle ABC$  such that  $\angle FBC = \angle FCB$ .  $BF, CF$  produced meet  $AC, AB$  at  $D, E$  respectively. Prove that if  $\angle AFD = \angle AFE$ ,  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles.

46.  $D$  is a point in the base  $BC$  of an equilateral  $\triangle ABC$ .  $E$  is the middle point of  $AD$ . Prove that  $EC > ED$ .

47.  $ABC$  is a  $\triangle$  of which  $\angle BAC$  is obtuse,  $O$  a point within it;  $BO, CO$  meet  $AC, AB$  at  $D, E$  respectively. Prove that  $BD + CE > BE + ED + DC$ .

48.  $D, E, F$  are points in the sides  $BC, CA, AB$  of an equilateral  $\triangle$  and are such that  $BD = CE = AF$ . If  $AD, BE, CF$  do not all pass through one point, they form an equilateral  $\triangle$ .

49. The bisector of  $\angle A$  of  $\triangle ABC$  meets  $BC$  at  $D$ .  $DE, DF$  drawn  $\parallel AB, AC$  respectively meet  $AC, AB$  at  $E, F$ . Prove that  $AEDF$  is a rhombus.

50. Through each angular point of a  $\triangle$  a st. line is drawn  $\parallel$  the opposite side: prove that the  $\triangle$  formed by these three st. lines is equiangular to the given  $\triangle$ .

51. **AD, BE, CF** respectively bisect the interior  $\angle A$  and the exterior  $\angle$ s at **B** and **C** of the  $\triangle ABC$ . Show that no two of the lines **AD, BE, CF** can be  $\parallel$ .

52. **DE** is  $\parallel$  to the base **AB** of the isosceles  $\triangle CAB$  and cuts **CA, CB**, or those sides produced, at **D, E** respectively. **AE, BD** cut at **F**. Prove that **DEF** is an isosceles  $\triangle$ .

53. Through **A, B** the extremities of a diameter of a circle  $\parallel$  chords **AC, BD** are drawn. Prove that **AC = BD**; and that **CD** is a diameter of the circle.

54. The median drawn from the vertex of a  $\triangle$  is  $>$ ,  $=$  or  $<$  half the base according as the vertical  $\angle$  is acute, right or obtuse.

55. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$ , obtuse- $\angle$ d at **C**; st. lines are drawn bisecting **CA, CB** at rt.  $\angle$ s, cutting **AB** in **D, E** respectively. Prove that  $\angle DCE$  is equal to twice the excess of  $\angle ACB$  over a rt.  $\angle$ .

56. With one extremity **C** of the base **BC** of an isosceles  $\triangle ABC$  as centre, and radius **CB**, a circle is described cutting **AB, AC** at **D, E** respectively. Prove that **DE**  $\parallel$  to the bisector of  $\angle B$ .

57. In  $\triangle ABC$  side **BC** is produced to **D**. Prove that the  $\angle$  between the bisectors of  $\angle$ s **ABC, ACD** = half the  $\angle A$ .

58. Through the vertices of  $\triangle ABC$ , st. lines falling within the  $\triangle$  are drawn making equal  $\angle$ s **BAL, CBM, ACN**; if these lines intersect in **D, E, F**, prove  $\triangle DEF$  equiangular to  $\triangle ABC$ .

59. If the  $\angle$  between two adjacent sides of a  $\parallel$ gm be increased, while their lengths do not alter, the diagonal through the point of intersection will decrease.

60. A, B, C are three given points. Find a point equidistant from A, B and such that its distance from C equals a given st. line. When is the problem impossible?

61. Through a fixed point draw a st. line which shall make with a given st. line adjacent  $\angle$ s the difference of which = a given  $\angle$ .

62. Construct a  $\triangle$  having given one  $\angle$  and the lengths of the  $\perp$ s from the vertices of the other  $\angle$ s on the opposite sides.

63. Construct an isosceles  $\triangle$  having given the vertical  $\angle$  and the altitude.

64. Construct an isosceles  $\triangle$  having given the perimeter and altitude.

65. Prove that the quadrilateral formed by joining the extremities of two diameters of a circle is a rectangle.

66. In a given  $\parallel$ gm inscribe a rhombus, such that one diagonal passes through a given point.

67. St. lines are drawn from a given point to a given st. line. Find the locus of the middle points of the st. lines.

68. St. lines are drawn from a given point to the circumference of a given circle. Find the locus of the middle points of the st. lines.

69. The sum of the  $\perp$ s from any point within an equilateral  $\triangle$  to the three sides is equal to the altitude of the  $\triangle$ .

70. Draw a square which has the sum of a side and a diagonal equal to 3 inches.

71. Draw a square in which the difference between a diagonal and a side is 1 inch.

72. Draw a rectangle having one side 2 inches in length, and subtending an  $\angle$  of  $40^\circ$  at the point of intersection of the diagonals.

(Use a protractor in Exercises 72 to 86.)

73. Draw a ||gm with diagonals 2 inches and 4 inches and their  $\angle$  of intersection  $50^\circ$ .

74. Draw a ||gm with diagonals 4 inches and 7 inches and one side 5 inches.

75. Draw a ||gm with side 3 inches, diagonal  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches and  $\angle 35^\circ$ . Show that there are two solutions.

76. Draw a ||gm with side  $2\frac{3}{8}$  inches,  $\angle 70^\circ$  and diagonal opposite  $\angle$  of  $70^\circ$  equal to 4 inches.

77. Draw a rectangle having the perimeter 8 inches and an  $\angle$  between the diagonals  $80^\circ$ .

78. Draw a rectangle having the difference of two sides 1 inch and an  $\angle$  between the diagonals  $50^\circ$ .

79. Draw a rectangle which has the perimeter 9 inches and a diagonal  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches.

80. Draw an  $\angle$  of  $55^\circ$ . Find within the  $\angle$  a point which is 1 inch from one arm and 2 inches from the other.

81. Construct a  $\triangle$  in which side  $a = 7$  cm.,  $b + c = 10\cdot6$  cm. and  $\angle A = 78^\circ$ .

82. Construct a  $\triangle$  with perimeter 4 inches and  $\angle$ s  $70^\circ$  and  $50^\circ$ .

83. **AB**, **CD** are two || st. lines; **P**, **Q** two fixed points. Find a point equidistant from **AB**, **CD** and also equidistant from **P** and **Q**. When is this impossible?

84. Through two given points on the same side of a given st. line draw two st. lines so as to form with the given st. line an equilateral  $\triangle$ .

85. Construct a rhombus with one diagonal 2 inches and the opposite  $\angle$   $100^\circ$ .

86. Construct a  $\triangle$  in which  $a = 8$  cm.,  $b - c = 2$  cm.,  $\angle C = 50^\circ$ .

87. Squares **ABGE**, **ACHF** are described externally on two sides of a  $\triangle ABC$ . Prove that the median **AD** of the  $\triangle$  is  $\perp$  **EF** and equal to half of **EF**.

**NOTE.**—*Rotate  $\triangle ABC$  through a rt.  $\angle$  making **AC** coincide with **AF**.*

88. Prove also in Ex. 87 that **EC** is  $\perp$  and  $= BF$ .

89. Trisect a rt.  $\angle$ .

90. From any point in the base of an isosceles  $\triangle$  st. lines are drawn  $\parallel$  to the equal sides and terminated by them. Prove that the sum of these lines = one of the equal sides.

91. **ABC** is a st. line such that **AB** = **BC**.  $\perp$ s are drawn from **A**, **B**, **C** to another st. line **EF**. Prove that the  $\perp$  from **B** = half the sum of the  $\perp$ s from **A** and **C**, unless **EF** passes between **A** and **C**, and then the  $\perp$  from **B** = half the difference of the  $\perp$ s from **A** and **C**.

92. **AD** is the bisector of  $\angle A$  of  $\triangle ABC$ , and **M** the middle point of **BC**. **BE** and **CF** are  $\perp$  **AD**. Prove that **ME** = **MF**.

93. **E**, **F** are the middle points of **AD**, **BC** respectively in the  $\parallel$ gm **ABCD**. Prove that **BE**, **DF** trisect **AC**.

94. Find a point **P** in the side **AC** of a  $\triangle ABC$  so that **AP** may be equal to the  $\perp$  from **P** to **BC**.

95. If the st. line **AB** be bisected at **C** and produced to **D**, prove that **CD** is half the sum of **AD**, **BD**.

96. In  $\triangle ABC$  side **AC** > side **AB**; **AX**  $\perp$  **BC** and **AD** is a median. Prove that (1)  $\angle CAX > \angle BAX$ ; (2)  $\angle CAD < \angle DAB$ ; (3) the bisector of  $\angle BAC$  falls between **AX** and **AD**.

97. The median of a  $\triangle ABC$  drawn from **A** is not less than the bisector of  $\angle A$ .

98. In a quadrilateral **ABCD**, **AB** = **DC** and  $\angle B = \angle C$ . Prove that **AD**  $\parallel$  **BC**.

99. If two medians of a  $\triangle$  are equal, the  $\triangle$  is isosceles.

NOTE.—*Use Ex. 6, § 64.*

100. If both pairs of opposite  $\angle$ s of a quadrilateral are equal, the quadrilateral is a  $\parallel$ gm.

101. Find the point on the base of a  $\triangle$  such that the difference of the  $\perp$ s from it to the sides is equal to a given st. line.

102. Find the point on the base of a  $\triangle$  such that the sum of the  $\perp$ s from it to the sides is equal to a given st. line.

103. Show that the three exterior  $\angle$ s at **A**, **C**, **E**, in the hexagon **ABCDEF**, are together less than the three interior  $\angle$ s at **B**, **D**, **F** by two rt.  $\angle$ s.

## BOOK II

### AREAS OF PARALLELOGRAMS AND TRIANGLES

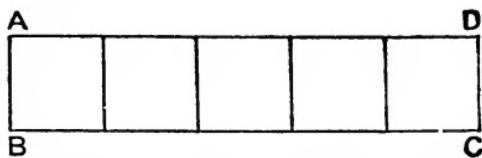
70. A square unit of area is a square, each side of which is equal to a unit of length.

Examples:—A square inch is a square each side of which is one inch; a square centimetre is a square each side of which is one centimetre.

The acre is an exceptional case.

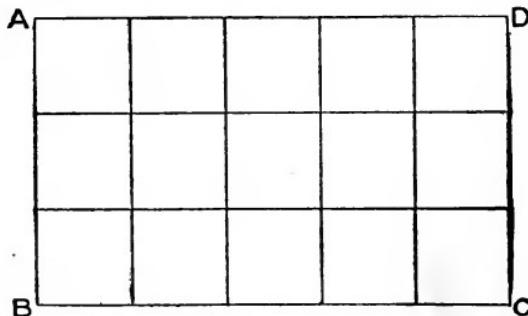
71. A numerical measure of any area is the number of times the area contains some unit of area.

**ABCD** is a rectangle one centimetre wide and five centimetres long.



This rectangle is a strip divided into five square centimetres, and consequently the numerical measure of its area in square centimetres is 5.

72. **ABCD** is a rectangle 3 cm. wide and 5 cm. long.



This rectangle is divided into 5 strips of 3 sq. cm. each, or into 3 strips of 5 sq. cm. each, and consequently

the measure of the area in square centimetres is  $5 \times 3$  sq. cm., or  $3 \times 5$  sq. cm.

Similarly, if the length of a rectangle is 234 inches and its breadth .56 of an inch, the one-hundredth of an inch may be taken as the unit and the rectangle can be divided into 234 strips each containing 56 square one-hundredths of an inch. The measure of the area then is  $234 \times 56$  of these small squares, ten thousand ( $100 \times 100$ ) of which make one square inch.

This method of expressing the area of a rectangle may be carried to any degree of approximation, so that in all cases the numerical measure of its area is equal to the product of its length by its breadth.

In a rectangle any side may be called the base, and then either of the adjacent sides is the altitude.

A rectangle, as **ABCD**, is commonly represented by the symbol **AB. BC**, where **AB** and **BC** may be taken to represent the number of units in the length and the breadth respectively.

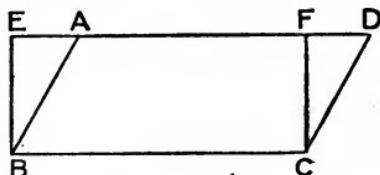
Or, if  $a$  be the measure of the base of a rectangle and  $b$  the measure of its altitude, the area is  $ab$ .

In the case of a square, the base is equal to the altitude, and if the measure of each be  $a$ , the area is  $a^2$ .

---

## THEOREM 1

The area of a parallelogram is equal to that of a rectangle on the same base and of the same altitude.



*Hypothesis.*— $\text{ABCD}$  is a ||gm and  $\text{EBCF}$  a rectangle on the same base  $\text{BC}$  and of the same altitude  $\text{EB}$ .

*To prove that* the area of the ||gm  $\text{ABCD} =$  the area of rect.  $\text{EBCF}$ .

*Proof.*—  $\because \text{ED}$  cuts the ||s  $\text{AB}, \text{DC}$ ,

$$\therefore \angle \text{EAB} = \angle \text{FDC}. \quad (\text{I}-9, \text{p. 42.})$$

$\because \text{ABCD}$  is a ||gm,

$$\therefore \text{AB} = \text{CD}. \quad (\text{I}-20, \text{p. 67.})$$

In  $\triangle \text{EAB}, \text{FDC}$ ,  $\begin{cases} \angle \text{EAB} = \angle \text{FDC}, \\ \angle \text{AEB} = \angle \text{DFC}, \\ \text{AB} = \text{DC}, \end{cases}$

$$\therefore \triangle \text{AEB} = \triangle \text{FDC}, \quad (\text{I}-14, \text{p. 54.})$$

Figure  $\text{EBCD} - \triangle \text{EAB} =$  ||gm  $\text{ABCD}$ ,

Figure  $\text{EBCD} - \triangle \text{FDC} =$  rect.  $\text{EBCF}$ ;

and as equal parts have been taken from the same area, the remainders are equal.

$$\therefore \text{||gm } \text{ABCD} = \text{rect. } \text{EBCF}.$$

*Cor.*—If  $a$  be the measure of the base of a ||gm and  $b$  the measure of its altitude, the area, being the same as that of a rect. of the same base and altitude,  $= ab$ .

### 73.—Practical Exercises

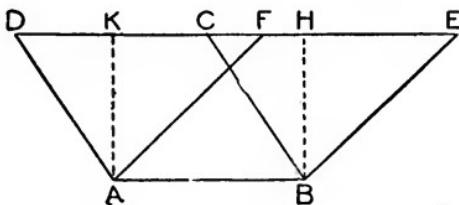
1. Draw a ||gm having two adjacent sides 6·4 cm. and 7·3 cm. and the contained  $\angle$   $30^\circ$ . Find its area.
2. Draw a ||gm having the two diagonals 4·8 cm. and 6·8 cm. and an  $\angle$  between the diagonals  $75^\circ$ . Find its area.
3. The area of a ||gm is 50 sq. cm., one side is 10 cm. and one  $\angle$  is  $60^\circ$ . Construct the ||gm, and measure the other side.
4. Draw a rectangle of base 7 cm. and height 4 cm. On the same base construct a ||gm having the same area as the rectangle and two of its sides each 65 mm. Measure one of the smaller  $\angle$ s of the ||gm.
5. Make a ||gm having sides 10 and 7 cm. and one  $\angle$   $60^\circ$ . Make a rhombus equal in area to the ||gm and having each side 10 cm. Measure the shorter diagonal of the rhombus.
6. Make a rectangle 8 cm. by 5 cm. Construct a ||gm equal in area to the rectangle and having two sides 7 cm. and 8 cm. Construct a rhombus equal in area to the ||gm and having each side 7 cm. Measure the shorter diagonal of the rhombus.
7. Make a rhombus having each side 8 cm. and its area 50 sq. cm. Measure the shorter diagonal.

ANSWERS:—1. 23·4 sq. cm. nearly. 2. 15·8 sq. cm. nearly.  
 3. 57·7 mm. nearly. 4.  $38^\circ$  nearly. 5. 64 mm. nearly.  
 6. 64 mm. nearly. 7. 69 mm. nearly.

---

## THEOREM. 2

Parallelograms on the same base and between the same parallels are equal in area.



*Hypothesis.*—**ABCD, ABEF** are ||gms on the same base **AB** and between the same ||s **AB, DE**.

*To prove that* ||gm **ABCD** = ||gm **ABEF**.

*Construction.*—Draw **AK, BH** each  $\perp$  to both **AB** and **DE**.

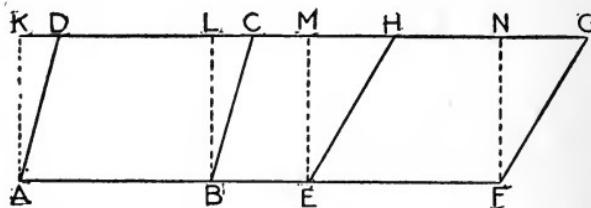
*Proof.*— $\because$  ||gm **ABCD** = rect. **ABHK**, (II—1, p. 95.)

and ||gm **ABEF** = rect. **ABHK**,

$\therefore$  ||gm **ABCD** = ||gm **ABEF**.

## THEOREM 3

Parallelograms on equal bases and between the same parallels are equal in area.



*Hypothesis.*—**ABCD, EFGH** are ||gms on the equal bases **AB, EF** and between the same ||s **AF, DG**.

*To prove that* ||gm **ABCD** = ||gm **EFGH**.

*Construction.*—Draw **AK, BL, EM, FN** each  $\perp$  to both **AF, DG**.

*Proof.*—  $\because AB = EF,$

and  $AK = EM,$  (I—20, p. 67.)

$\therefore \text{rect. } KB = \text{rect. } MF.$

But ||gm **ABCD** = rect. **KB,** (II—1, p. 95.)

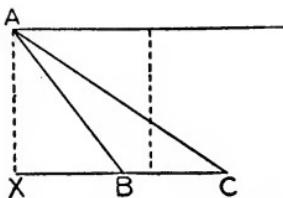
and ||gm **EFGH** = rect. **MF,**

$\therefore$  ||gm **ABCD** = ||gm **EFGH.**

74. Draw an acute-angled  $\triangle ABC$ . Draw the  $\perp$  from **A** to **BC**. Draw through **A**, a st. line  $\parallel BC$ . Show that the  $\perp$  distance between these  $\parallel$  lines at any place = the altitude of  $\triangle ABC$ .

Draw an obtuse-angled  $\triangle ABC$ , having the obtuse  $\angle$  at **B**. Draw the altitude **AX**.

Show that it falls without the  $\triangle$ . Draw through **A**, a st. line  $\parallel BC$ . Show that the distance between these  $\parallel$  lines at any place = the altitude of the  $\triangle$ .



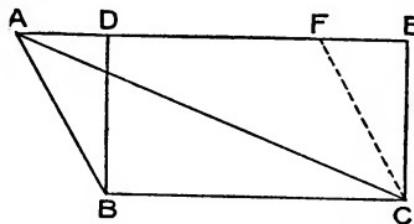
Taking **C** as the vertex and **AB** as the base, draw the altitude.

If a  $\triangle$  is between two  $\parallel$ s, having its base in one of the  $\parallel$ s and its vertex in the other, its altitude is the distance between the  $\parallel$ s.

---

## THEOREM 4

The area of a triangle is half that of the rectangle on the same base and of the same altitude as the triangle.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a  $\triangle$  and DBCE a rectangle on the same base and of the same altitude BD.

*To prove that area of  $\triangle$  ABC = half that of rect. DBCE.*

*Construction.*—Through C draw CF  $\parallel$  BA.

*Proof.*— $\because$  AC is a diagonal of  $\parallel$ gm ABCF,

$$\therefore \triangle ABC = \text{half of } \parallel\text{gm ABCF. (I--20, p. 67.)}$$

$$\text{But } \parallel\text{gm ABCF} = \text{rect. DBCE, (II.--1, p. 95.)}$$

$$\therefore \triangle ABC = \text{half of rect. DBCE.}$$

*Cor.*—If  $a$  be the measure of the base of a  $\triangle$  and  $b$  the measure of its altitude, the measure of its area is  $\frac{1}{2}ab$ .

## 75.—Practical Exercises

1. Draw a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  having the sides that contain the right  $\angle$  56 mm. and 72 mm. Find the area of the  $\triangle$ .
2. Make a  $\triangle$  ABC, having  $b = 6$  cm.,  $c = 8$  cm., and  $\angle A = 72^\circ$ . Find its area.
3. Draw a  $\triangle$  having its sides 73 mm., 57 mm. and 48 mm. Find its area.

4. Find the area of the  $\triangle$ :  $a = 10$  cm.,  $\angle B = 42^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 58^\circ$ .

5. The sides of a triangular field are 36 chains, 25 chains and 29 chains. Draw a diagram and find the number of acres in the field. (Scale: 1 mm. to the chain.)

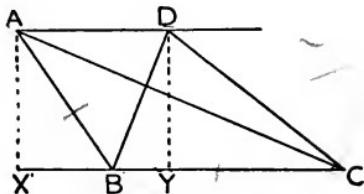
6. Two sides of a triangular field are 41 and 38 chains and the contained  $\angle$  is  $70^\circ$ . Find its area in acres.

**ANSWERS:**—1. 20·16 sq. cm.; 2. 23 sq. cm. nearly; 3. 13·7 sq. cm. nearly; 4. 28·8 sq. cm.; 5. 36 ac.; 6. 73 ac. nearly.

---

### THEOREM 5

**Triangles on the same base and between the same parallels are equal in area.**



**Hypothesis.**— $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\triangle DBC$  are  $\triangle$ s on the same base  $BC$  and between the same  $\parallel$ s  $AD$ ,  $BC$ .

**To prove that**  $\triangle ABC = \triangle DBC$ .

**Construction.**—Draw  $AX$ ,  $DY \perp BC$ .

**Proof.**—  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \text{rect. } AX \cdot BC$ . (II—4, p. 100.)  
 $\triangle DBC = \frac{1}{2} \text{rect. } DY \cdot BC$ .

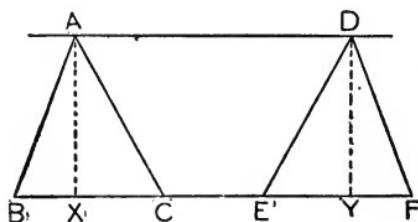
But,  $\because AX = DY$ ,

$\therefore \text{rect. } AX \cdot BC = \text{rect. } DY \cdot BC$ .

and  $\therefore \triangle ABC = \triangle DBC$ .

## THEOREM 6

Triangles on equal bases and between the same parallels are equal in area.



*Hypothesis.*— $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\triangle DEF$  are  $\triangle$ s on equal bases  $BC$ ,  $EF$  and between the same  $\parallel$ s  $AD$ ,  $BF$ .

*To prove that*  $\triangle ABC = \triangle DEF$ .

*Construction.*—Draw  $AX$ ,  $DY \perp BF$ .

$$\text{Proof.} \quad \triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \text{ rect. } AX \cdot BC. \quad (\text{II.}-4, \text{ p. 100.})$$

$$\triangle DEF = \frac{1}{2} \text{ rect. } DY \cdot EF.$$

$$\text{But, } \because BC = EF,$$

$$\text{and } AX = DY, \quad (\text{I.}-20, \text{ p. 67.})$$

$$\therefore \text{rect. } AX \cdot BC = \text{rect. } DY \cdot EF.$$

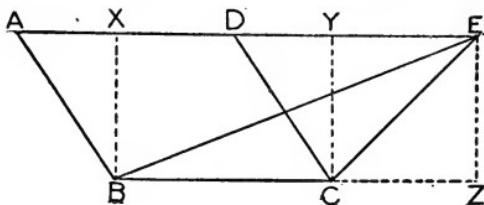
$$\text{Hence, } \triangle ABC = \triangle DEF.$$

*Cor. 1.*—Triangles on equal bases and of the same altitude are equal in area.

*Cor. 2.*—A median bisects the area of the triangle.

## THEOREM 7

If a parallelogram and a triangle are on the same base and between the same parallels, the parallelogram is double the triangle.



*Hypothesis.*— $\text{ABCD}$  is a ||gm and  $\triangle EBC$  a  $\triangle$  on the same base  $BC$  and between the same ||s  $AE, BC$ .

*To prove that* ||gm  $\text{ABCD} =$  twice  $\triangle EBC$ .

*Construction.*—Draw  $BX, CY, EZ \perp BC$  and  $AE$ .

*Proof.*—||gm  $\text{ABCD} = \text{rect. } BX \cdot BC$ . (II—1, p. 95.)

$$\triangle EBC = \frac{1}{2} \text{ rect. } EZ \cdot BC. \quad (\text{II—4, p. 100.})$$

$$\text{But, } \because BX = EZ \quad (\text{I—20, p. 67.})$$

$$\therefore \text{rect. } BX \cdot BC = \text{rect. } EZ \cdot BC.$$

And  $\therefore$  ||gm  $\text{ABCD} =$  twice  $\triangle EBC$ .

## 76.—Exercises

X 1.  $\triangle s ABC, DEF$  are between the same ||s  $AD$  and  $BCEF$ , and  $BC > EF$ . Prove that  $\triangle ABC > \triangle DEF$ .

2. On the same base with a ||gm construct a rectangle equal in area to the ||gm.

3. On the same base with a given ||gm, construct a ||gm equal in area to the given ||gm, and having one of its sides equal to a given st. line.

X 4. Construct a rect. equal in area to a given ||gm, and having one of its sides equal to a given st. line.

5. Make a ||gm with sides 5 cm. and 3 cm., and contained  $\angle 125^\circ$ . Construct an equivalent rect. having one side 1.5 cm.

6. On the same base as a given  $\triangle$  construct a rect. equal in area to the  $\triangle$ .

7. Construct a rect. equal in area to a given  $\triangle$ , and having one of its sides equal to a given st. line.

✗ 8. On the same base with a ||gm construct a rhombus equal in area to the ||gm.

✗ 9. Construct a rhombus equal in area to a given ||gm, and having each of its sides equal to a given st. line.

10. On the same base with a given  $\triangle$ , construct a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  equal in area to the given  $\triangle$ .

✗ 11. On the same base with a given  $\triangle$ , construct an isosceles  $\triangle$  equal in area to the given  $\triangle$ .

✗ 12. If, in the ||gm ABCD, P be any point between AB, CD produced indefinitely, the sum of the  $\triangle$ s PAB, PCD equals half the ||gm; and if P be any point not between AB, CD, the difference of the  $\triangle$ s PAB, PCD equals half the ||gm.

✗ 13. AB and ECD are two || st. lines; BF, DF are drawn || AD, AE respectively; prove that  $\triangle$ s ABC, DEF are equal to each other.

14. On the same base with a given  $\triangle$ , construct a  $\triangle$  equal in area to the given  $\triangle$ , and having its vertex in a given st. line.

✓ 15. If two  $\triangle$ s have two sides of one respectively equal to two sides of the other and the contained  $\angle$ s supplementary, the  $\triangle$ s are equal in area.

✓ 16. ABCD is a ||gm, and P is a point in the diagonal AC. Prove that  $\triangle PAB = \triangle PAD$ .

17. P is a point within a ||gm ABCD. Prove that  $\triangle PAC$  equals the difference between  $\triangle$ s PAB, PAD.

X 18. In  $\triangle ABC$ , BC and CA are produced to P and Q respectively, such that CP = one-half of BC, and AQ = one-half of CA. Show that  $\triangle QCP$  = three-fourths of  $\triangle ABC$ .

X 19. The medians BE, CD of the  $\triangle ABC$  intersect at F. Show that  $\triangle BFC$  = quadrilateral ADFE.

X 20. On the sides AB, BC of a  $\triangle$  the ||gms ABDE, CBFG are described external to the  $\triangle$ . ED and GF meet at H and BH is joined. On AC the ||gm CAKL is described with CL and AK  $\parallel$  and  $= HB$ . Prove ||gm AL = ||gm AD + ||gm CF.

X 21. Two  $\triangle$ s are equal in area and between the same ||s. Prove that they are on equal bases.

X 22. Of all  $\triangle$ s on a given base and between the same ||s, the isosceles  $\triangle$  has the least perimeter.

23. ABCD is a ||gm, and E is a point such that AE, CE are respectively  $\perp$  and  $\parallel$  to BD. Show that BE = CD.

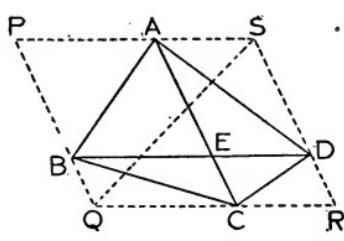
X 24. The side AB of ||gm ABCD is produced to E and DE cuts BC at F. AF and CE are joined. Prove that  $\triangle AFE = \triangle CBE$ .

25. In the quadrilateral ABCD, AB  $\parallel$  CD. If AB =  $a$ , CD =  $b$  and the distance between AB and CD =  $h$ , show that the area of ABCD =  $\frac{1}{2} h(a + b)$ .

26. Two sides AB, AC of a  $\triangle$  are given in length, find the  $\angle A$  for which the area of the  $\triangle$  will be greatest.

27. The medians AD, BE of  $\triangle ABC$  intersect at G, and CG is joined. Prove that the three lines AG, BG, CG trisect the area of the  $\triangle$ .

28. Bisect the area of a  $\triangle$  by a st. line drawn through a vertex.
29. Trisect the area of a  $\triangle$  by two st. lines drawn through a vertex.
30. Bisect the area of a  $\triangle$  by a st. line drawn through a given point in one of the sides.
31. Trisect the area of a  $\triangle$  by two st. lines drawn through a given point in one of the sides.



32. The area of any quadrilateral **ABCD** is equal to that of a  $\triangle$  having two sides and their included  $\angle$  respectively equal to the diagonals of the quadrilateral and their included  $\angle$ .

**NOTE.**—Draw **PS** and **QR**  $\parallel$  **BD**, **PQ** and **SR**  $\parallel$  **AC**. Join **SQ**.

33. Prove that in a rhombus the distance between one pair of opposite sides equals the distance between the other pair.

34.  $\|gms$  are described on the same base and between the same  $\|s$ . Find the locus of the intersection of their diagonals.

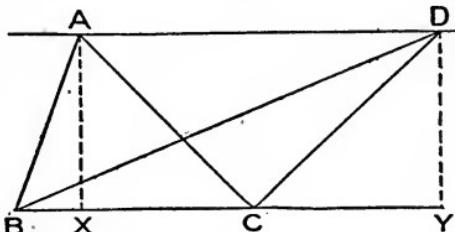
35. Prove that the area of a rhombus is half the product of the lengths of its diagonals.

36. **ABCD** is a quadrilateral in which **AB**  $\parallel$  **CD**, **E** is the middle point of **AD**. Prove that  $\triangle BEC = \frac{1}{2}$  quadrilateral **ABCD**.

37. Divide a given  $\triangle$  into seven equal parts.

## THEOREM 8

If two equal triangles are on the same side of a common base, the straight line joining their vertices is parallel to the common base.



*Hypothesis.*—**ABC, DBC** are two equal  $\triangle$ s on the same side of the common base **BC**.

*To prove that*  $AD \parallel BC$ .

*Construction.*—Draw **AX** and **DY**  $\perp$  **BC**.

*Proof.*—  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \text{ rect. } BC \cdot AX$ . (II—4, p. 100.)

$$\triangle DBC = \frac{1}{2} \text{ rect. } BC \cdot DY;$$

$$\text{but } \triangle ABC = \triangle DBC,$$

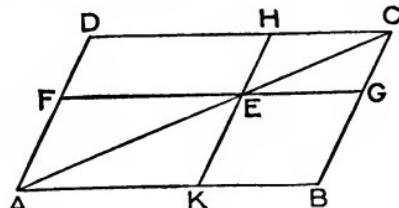
$$\therefore \frac{1}{2} \text{ rect. } BC \cdot AX = \frac{1}{2} \text{ rect. } BC \cdot DY$$

$$\text{and hence } AX = DY,$$

that is, **AX** and **DY** are both = and  $\parallel$  to each other

$$\therefore AD \parallel XY. \quad (\text{I—19, p. 66.})$$

77. If, through any point **E**, in the diagonal **AC** of a parallelogram **BD**, two straight lines **FEG**, **HEK** be drawn parallel respectively to the sides **DC**, **DA** of the parallelogram,

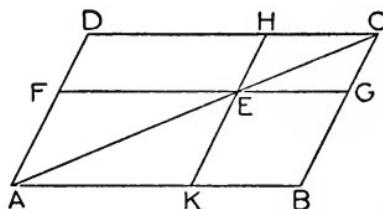


the  $\parallel$ gms **FK** and **HG** are said to be parallelograms

about the diagonal **AC**, and the ||gms **DE**, **EB** are called the complements of the ||gms **FK**, **HG**, which are about the diagonal.

### THEOREM 9

The complements of the parallelograms about the diagonal of any parallelogram are equal to each other.



*Hypothesis.*—**FK** and **HG** are ||gms about the diagonal **AC** of the ||gm **ABCD**.

*To prove that* the complements **DE**, **EB** are equal to each other.

*Proof.*— ∵ **AE** is a diagonal of ||gm **FK**,  
 $\therefore \triangle AFE = \triangle AKE.$  (I—20, p. 67.)

Similarly  $\triangle HEC = \triangle EGC.$

$$\therefore \triangle AFE + \triangle HEC = \triangle AKE + \triangle EGC.$$

But, ∵ **AC** is a diagonal of ||gm **ABCD**

$$\therefore \triangle ADC = \triangle ABC.$$

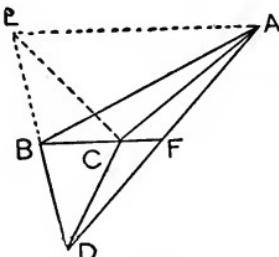
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \triangle ADC - (\triangle AFE + \triangle HEC) \\ = \triangle ABC - (\triangle AKE + \triangle EGC). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \text{||gm } DE = \text{||gm } EB.$$

## 78.—Exercises

1. If two equal  $\triangle$ s be on equal segments of the same st. line and on the same side of the line, the st. line joining their vertices is  $\parallel$  to the line containing their bases.
2. Through P, a point within the ||gm ABCD, EPF is drawn  $\parallel$  AB and GPH is drawn  $\parallel$  AD. If ||gm AP = ||gm PC, show that P is on the diagonal BD. (Converse of Theorem 9.)
3. Two equal  $\triangle$ s ABC, DBC are on opposite sides of the same base. Prove that AD is bisected by BC, or BC produced.

NOTE.—Produce DB making BE = DB. Join EA, EC.



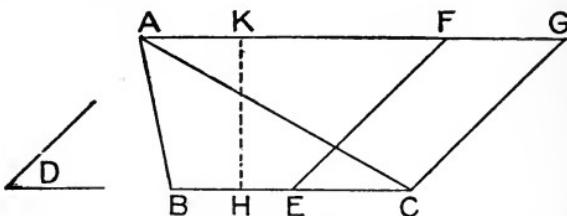
Give another proof of this proposition using  $\perp$ s from A and D to BC and II—4, p. 100.

4. The median drawn to the base of a  $\triangle$  bisects all st. lines drawn  $\parallel$  to the base and terminated by the sides, or the sides produced.
5. P is a point within a  $\triangle$  ABC and is such that  $\triangle PAB + \triangle PBC$  is constant. Prove that the locus of P is a st. line  $\parallel$  AC.
6. ||gms about the diagonal of a square are squares.
7. D, E, F are respectively the middle points of the sides BC, CA, AB in the  $\triangle$  ABC. Prove  $\triangle BEF = \triangle CEF$  and hence that EF  $\parallel$  BC.
8. In the diagram of II—9, show that FK  $\parallel$  HG.

## CONSTRUCTIONS

## PROBLEM 1

To construct a parallelogram equal in area to a given triangle and having one of its angles equal to a given angle.



Let **ABC** be the given  $\triangle$  and **D** the given  $\angle$ .

It is required to construct a ||gm equal in area to  $\triangle ABC$  and having one  $\angle$  equal to  $\angle D$ .

*Construction.*—Through **A** draw **AFG**  $\parallel$  **BC**. Bisect **BC** at **E**. At **E** make  $\angle CEF = \angle D$ . Through **C** draw **CG**  $\parallel$  **EF**.

**FC** is the required ||gm.

*Proof.*—Draw any line **HK**  $\perp$  to the two || st. lines.

**HK** is the common altitude of the ||gm **FC** and the  $\triangle ABC$ .

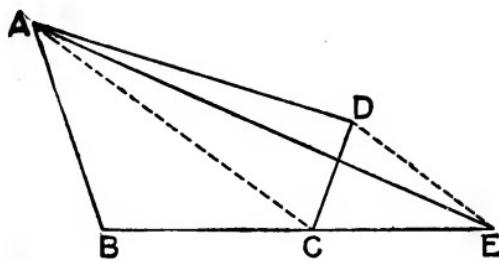
$$\text{||gm } FC = \text{rect. } EC \cdot HK. \quad (\text{II--1, p. 95.})$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \text{rect. } BC \cdot HK, \because EC = \frac{1}{2} BC,$$

$$= \triangle ABC. \quad (\text{II--4, p. 100.})$$

## PROBLEM 2

To construct a triangle equal in area to a given quadrilateral.



Let **ABCD** be the given quadrilateral.

It is required to construct a  $\triangle$  equal in area to **ABCD**.

*Construction.*—Join **AC**. Through **D** draw  $DE \parallel AC$  and meeting **BC** produced at **E**. Join **AE**.

$$\triangle ABE = \text{quadrilateral } ABCD.$$

*Proof.*— $\because DE \parallel AC$ ,

$$\therefore \triangle EAC = \triangle DAC. \quad (\text{II--5, p. 101.})$$

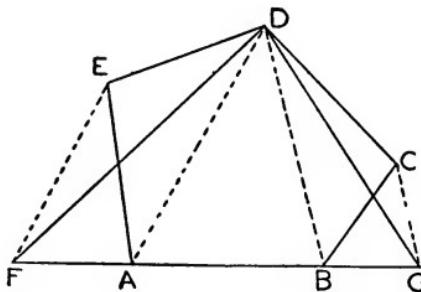
To each of these equals add  $\triangle ABC$ .

Then  $\triangle ABE = \text{quadrilateral } ABCD$ .

---

## PROBLEM 3

To construct a triangle equal in area to a given rectilineal figure.



Let the pentagon **ABCDE** be the given rectilineal figure.

*Construction.*—Join **AD**, **BD**. Through **E**, draw **EF**  $\parallel$  **AD** and meeting **BA** at **F**. Through **C** draw **CG**  $\parallel$  **BD** and meeting **AB** at **G**.

Join **DF**, **DG**.

$$\triangle \text{DFG} = \text{figure ABCDE}.$$

*Proof.*—

$$\because EF \parallel AD,$$

$$\therefore \triangle DFA = \triangle DEA. \quad (\text{II}-5, \text{p. 101.})$$

$$\because CG \parallel DB,$$

$$\therefore \triangle DGB = \triangle DCB.$$

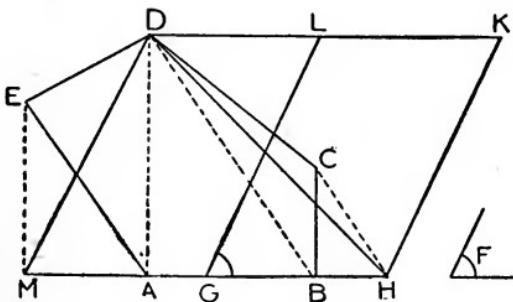
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \triangle DFA + \triangle DAB + \triangle DBG \\ = \triangle DEA + \triangle DAB + \triangle DCB; \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e., } \triangle \text{DFG} = \text{figure ABCDE}.$$

By this method a  $\triangle$  may be constructed equal in area to a given rectilineal figure of any number of sides; *e.g.*, for a figure of seven sides, an equivalent figure of five sides may be constructed, and then, as in the construction just given, a  $\triangle$  may be constructed equal to the figure of five sides.

#### PROBLEM 4

To describe a parallelogram equal to a given rectilineal figure, and having an angle equal to a given angle.



Let  $ABCDE$  be the given rectilineal figure and  $F$  the given  $\angle$ .

It is required to construct a  $\parallel\text{gm}$  = ABCDE, and having an  $\angle = \angle F$ .

*Construction.*—Make  $\triangle DMH$  equal in area to figure ABCDE. (II—Prob. 3, p. 112.)

Make  $\|gm\ LGHK = \triangle DMH$ , and having  $\angle LGH = \angle F$ . (II—Prob. 1, p. 110.)

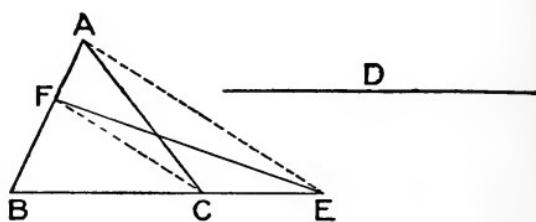
Then  $\parallel\text{gm } LGHK = \text{figure ABCDE}$ , and has  $\angle LGH = \angle F$ .

### 79.—Exercises

1. Construct a rect. equal in area to a given  $\triangle$ .
  2. Construct a rect. equal in area to a given quadrilateral.
  3. Construct a quadrilateral equal in area to a given hexagon.
  4. On one side of a given  $\triangle$  construct a rhombus equal in area to the given  $\triangle$ .
  5. Construct a  $\triangle$  equal in area to a given  $\parallel$  gm, and having one of its  $\angle$ s = a given  $\angle$ .

## PROBLEM 5

To construct a triangle equal in area to a given triangle and having one of its sides equal to a given straight line.



Let  $\triangle ABC$  be the given  $\triangle$  and  $D$  the given st. line.

It is required to make a  $\triangle = \triangle ABC$  and having one side  $= D$ .

*Construction.*—From  $BC$ , produced if necessary, cut off  $BE = D$ . Join  $AE$ . Through  $C$  draw  $CF \parallel EA$  and meeting  $BA$ , or  $BA$  produced at  $F$ . Join  $FE$ .

$\triangle FBE$  is the required  $\triangle$ .

*Proof.*—  $\because FC \parallel AE$ ,

$$\therefore \triangle FCE = \triangle AFC. \quad (\text{II}-5, \text{p. 101.})$$

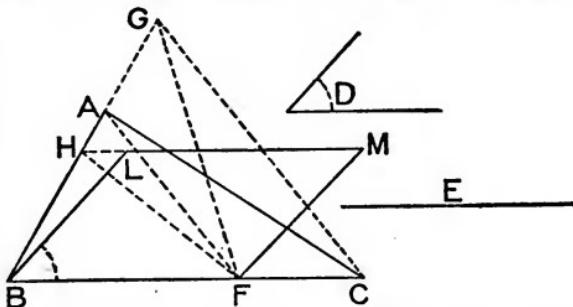
$$\therefore \triangle FBC + \triangle FCE = \triangle FBC + \triangle AFC,$$

$$\text{i.e., } \triangle FBE = \triangle ABC,$$

and side  $BE$  was made  $= D$ .

## PROBLEM 6

On a straight line of given length to make a parallelogram equal in area to a given triangle and having an angle equal to a given angle.



Let  $\triangle ABC$  be the given  $\triangle$ ,  $E$  the given st. line and  $D$  the given  $\angle$ .

It is required to make a ||gm equal in area to  $\triangle ABC$ , having one side equal in length to  $E$ , and one  $\angle$  equal to  $D$ .

*Construction.*—From  $BC$ , produced if necessary, cut off  $BF = E$ . Join  $AF$ . Through  $C$  draw  $CG \parallel FA$  meeting  $BA$ , or  $BA$  produced, at  $G$ . Join  $GF$ . Bisect  $BG$  at  $H$ . Through  $H$  draw  $HM \parallel BC$ . At  $B$  make  $\angle CBL = \angle D$ . Through  $F$  draw  $FM \parallel BL$ .

$LBFM$  is the required ||gm.

*Proof.*—Join  $HF$ .

$\triangle GAF, AFC$  are on the same base  $AF$  and have the same altitude,  $\therefore$  they are equal. (II—5, p. 101.)

To each of these equal  $\triangle$ s add the  $\triangle ABF$ , and

$$\triangle GBF = \triangle ABC.$$

$$\triangle GBF = \text{twice } \triangle HBF, \quad (\text{II—6, Cor. 2, p. 102.})$$

$$= \text{||gm } LBFM, \quad (\text{II—7, p. 103.})$$

$$\therefore \text{||gm } LBFM = \triangle ABC.$$

Also  $\angle LBF = \angle D$  and side  $BF = E$ .

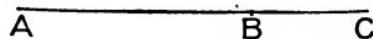
## AREAS OF SQUARES

80.—A rectangle is said to be contained by two st. lines when its length is equal to one of the st. lines, and its breadth is equal to the other.

The symbol  $\mathbf{AB}^2$  should be read:—"the square on  $\mathbf{AB}$ ," and not " $\mathbf{AB}$  squared."

## THEOREM 10

The square on the sum of two straight lines equals the sum of the squares on the two straight lines increased by twice the rectangle contained by the straight lines.



*Hypothesis.*— $\mathbf{AB}$ ,  $\mathbf{BC}$  are the two st. lines placed in the same st. line so that  $\mathbf{AC}$  is their sum.

*To prove that*

$$\mathbf{AC}^2 = \mathbf{AB}^2 + \mathbf{BC}^2 + 2 \cdot \mathbf{AB} \cdot \mathbf{BC}.$$

*Algebraic Proof*

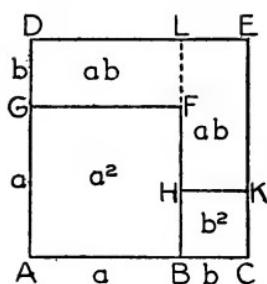
*Proof.*—Let  $a$ ,  $b$  represent the number of units of length in  $\mathbf{AB}$ ,  $\mathbf{BC}$  respectively.

Area of the square on  $\mathbf{AC}$

$$= (a + b)^2$$

$$= a^2 + b^2 + 2 ab$$

= area of square on  $\mathbf{AB}$  + area of square on  $\mathbf{BC}$  + twice the area of the rectangle contained by  $\mathbf{AB}$ , and  $\mathbf{BC}$ .

*Geometric Proof*

*Construction.*—On **AC**, **AB**, **BC** draw squares **ACED**, **ABFG**, **BCKH**. Produce **BF** to meet **DE** at **L**.

*Proof.*—

$$\mathbf{GD} = \mathbf{AD} - \mathbf{AG} = \mathbf{AC} - \mathbf{AB} = \mathbf{BC}, \text{ and } \mathbf{GF} = \mathbf{AB}.$$

$$\therefore \mathbf{GL} = \text{rect. } \mathbf{AB.BC}.$$

$$\mathbf{KE} = \mathbf{CE} - \mathbf{CK} = \mathbf{AC} - \mathbf{BC} = \mathbf{AB}, \text{ and } \mathbf{HK} = \mathbf{BC}.$$

$$\therefore \mathbf{HE} = \text{rect. } \mathbf{AB.BC}.$$

$$\mathbf{AC}^2 = \mathbf{AE}$$

$$= \mathbf{AF} + \mathbf{BK} + \mathbf{GL} + \mathbf{HE}$$

$$= \mathbf{AB}^2 + \mathbf{BC}^2 + 2 \mathbf{AB.BC}.$$

## THEOREM 11

The square on the difference of two straight lines equals the sum of the squares on the two straight lines diminished by twice the rectangle contained by the straight lines.



*Hypothesis.*—**AB**, **BC** are two st. lines, of which **AB** is the greater, placed in the same st. line, and so that **AC** is their difference.

*To prove that*

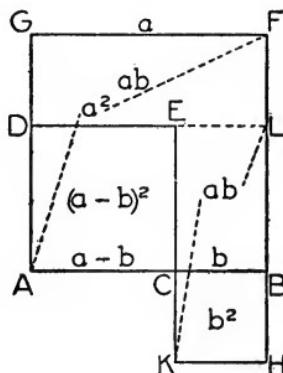
$$\mathbf{AC}^2 = \mathbf{AB}^2 + \mathbf{BC}^2 - 2 \cdot \mathbf{AB} \cdot \mathbf{BC}.$$

*Algebraic Proof*

*Proof.*—Let  $a$ ,  $b$  represent the number of units of length in **AB**, **BC** respectively.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Area of square on } \mathbf{AC} &= (a - b)^2 \\ &= a^2 + b^2 - 2ab.\end{aligned}$$

= the sum of the squares on **AB** and **BC** diminished by twice the area of the rectangle contained by **AB** and **BC**.

*Geometric Proof*

*Construction.*—On **AC**, **AB**, **BC** draw the squares **ACED**, **ABFG**, **BCKH**. Produce **DE** to meet **BF** at **L**.

*Proof.*— $DG = AG - AD = AB - AC = BC$ , and  $DL = AB$ .

$$\therefore DF = \text{rect. } AB \cdot BC.$$

$KE = KC + CE = BC + AC = AB$ , and  $KH = BC$ .

$$\therefore KL = \text{rect. } AB \cdot BC.$$

$$AC^2 = AE$$

$$= AF + KB - (DF + KL)$$

$$= AB^2 + BC^2 - 2 AB \cdot BC.$$

### THEOREM 12

The difference of the squares on two straight lines equals the rectangle of which the length is the sum of the straight lines and the breadth is the difference of the straight lines.

A—————

B—————

**A, B** are two st. lines, of which  $A > B$ .

*To prove that the square on A diminished by the square on B = the rect. contained by  $A + B$  and  $A - B$ .*

*Proof.*—Let  $a, b$  represent the number of units in **A** and **B** respectively.

The difference of the squares on **A** and **B**

$$= a^2 - b^2$$

$$= (a + b)(a - b)$$

= the area of the rectangle

contained by **A + B** and **A - B**.

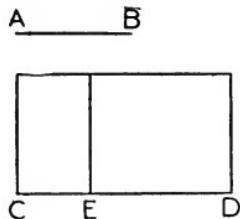
## 81.—Exercises

1. Draw a diagram illustrative of Theorem 12.
2. The square on the sum of three st. lines equals the sum of the squares on the three st. lines increased by twice the sum of the rectangles contained by each pair of the st. lines.

Illustrate by diagram.

3. The sum of the squares on two unequal st. lines > twice the rectangle contained by the two st. lines.
4. The sum of the squares on three unequal st. lines > the sum of the rectangles contained by each pair of the st. lines.
5. Construct a rectangle equal to the difference of two given squares.
6. If there be two st. lines **AB** and **CD**, and **CD** be divided at **E** into any two parts, the rect. **AB.CD** = rect. **AB.CE** + rect. **AB.ED**.

Let **AB** =  $p$  units of length



$$\mathbf{CE} = q \quad " \quad " \quad "$$

$$\mathbf{ED} = r \quad " \quad " \quad "$$

$$\text{Area of } \mathbf{AB} \cdot \mathbf{CD} = p (q+r)$$

$$" \quad " \quad \mathbf{AB} \cdot \mathbf{CE} = pq$$

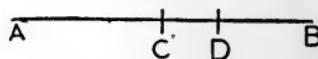
$$" \quad " \quad \mathbf{AB} \cdot \mathbf{ED} = pr.$$

$$\text{But } p (q+r) = pq + pr.$$

$$\therefore \mathbf{AB} \cdot \mathbf{CD} = \mathbf{AB} \cdot \mathbf{CE} + \mathbf{AB} \cdot \mathbf{ED}.$$

7. Give a diagram illustrating the identity  $(a+b)(c+d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$ , taking  $a, b, c, d$  to be respectively the number of units in four st. lines.

8. **C** is the middle point of a st. line **AB**, and **D** is any other point in the line. Prove:

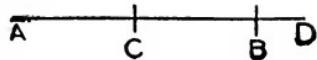


$$(1) AD \cdot DB = AC^2 - CD^2;$$

$$(2) AD^2 + DB^2 = 2 AC^2 + 2 CD^2.$$

(Let  $AC = CB = p$ ,  $CD = q$ ).

9. **C** is the middle point of a st. line **AB**, and **D** is any point in **AB** produced. Prove:



$$(1) AD \cdot DB = CD^2 - AC^2;$$

$$(2) AD^2 + DB^2 = 2 AC^2 + 2 CD^2.$$

10. Draw diagrams to illustrate the four results in exercises 8 and 9.

11. Draw a diagram illustrating the identity  $(a + b)^2 - (a - b)^2 = 4 ab$ .

12. If **A**, **B**, **C**, **D** be four points in order in a st. line,  $AB \cdot CD + AD \cdot BC = AC \cdot BD$ .

Illustrate by a diagram.

13. **AB** is a st. line in which **C** is any point. Prove that  $AB^2 = AB \cdot AC + AB \cdot CB$ .

14. Construct a  $\triangle$  having two sides and the median drawn to one of these sides equal to three given st. lines.

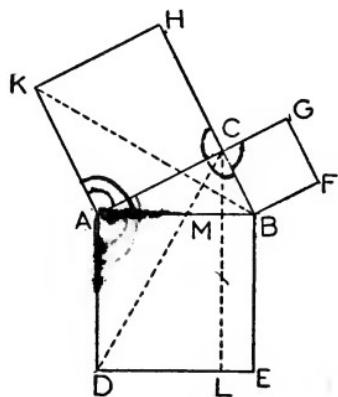
15. Construct a  $\triangle$  having two sides and the median drawn to the third side equal to three given st. lines.

16. In a given ||gm inscribe a rhombus having one vertex at a given point in a side of the ||gm.



## THEOREM 13

The square described on the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a  $\triangle$  in which  $\angle ACB$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , and AE, BG, CK are squares on AB, BC and CA.

*To prove that*  $AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2$ .

*Construction.*—Through C draw CL  $\parallel$  AD.

Join KB, CD.

*Proof.*— $\because \angle s$  HCA, ACB, BCG are rt.  $\angle s$ ,

$\therefore \angle s$  HCB, ACG are st.  $\angle s$ .

and  $\therefore$  HCB, ACG are st. lines.

$$\angle BAD = \angle KAC,$$

to each add  $\angle CAB$ ,

then  $\angle CAD = \angle KAB$ .

In  $\triangle s$  CAD, KAB,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} CA = KA \\ AD = AB \\ \angle CAD = \angle KAB \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \triangle CAD = \triangle KAB$$

(I—2, p. 16.)

$\therefore$  rect. **ADLM** and  $\triangle \text{CAD}$  are on the same base **AD** and between the same  $\parallel$ s **CL, AD**,

$\therefore$  rect. **AL** = twice  $\triangle \text{CAD}$ . (II—7, p. 103.)

Similarly, sq. **HA** = twice  $\triangle \text{KAB}$ .

$\therefore$  rect. **AL** = sq. **HA**.

In the same manner, by joining **CE** and **AF**, it may be shown that

$$\text{rect. } \mathbf{BL} = \text{sq. } \mathbf{BG}.$$

$$\therefore \text{rect. } \mathbf{AL} + \text{rect. } \mathbf{BL} = \text{sq. } \mathbf{HA} + \text{sq. } \mathbf{BG},$$

$$\therefore i.e., \mathbf{AB^2} = \mathbf{AC^2} + \mathbf{BC^2}.$$

82. Many proofs have been given for this important theorem. Pythagoras (570 to 500 B.C.) is said by tradition to have been the first to prove it, and from that it is commonly called the Theorem of Pythagoras, or the Pythagorean Theorem. The proof given above is attributed to Euclid (about 300 B.C.). An alternative proof is given in Book IV.

### 83.—Exercises

1. Draw two st. lines 5 cm. and 6 cm. in length. Describe squares on both, and make a square equal in area to the two squares. Measure the side of this last square and check your result by calculation.

2. Draw three squares having sides 1 in., 2 in. and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. Make one square equal to the sum of the three. Check by calculation.

3. Draw two squares having sides  $1\frac{1}{2}$  in. and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  in. Make a third square equal to the difference of the first two. Check by calculation.

4. Draw two squares having sides 9 cm. and 6 cm. Make a third square equal to the difference of the first two. Check your result by calculation.

5. Draw any square and one of its diagonals. Draw a square on the diagonal and show that it is double the first square.

6. Draw a square having each side 4 cm. Draw a second square double the first. Measure a side, and check by calculation.

7. Draw a square having one side 45 mm. Draw a second square three times the first. Measure its side, and check by calculation.

8. Draw three lines in the ratio 1:2:3. Draw squares on the lines, and divide the two larger so as to show that the squares are in the ratio 1:4:9.

9. Draw a st. line  $\sqrt{2}$  in. in length.

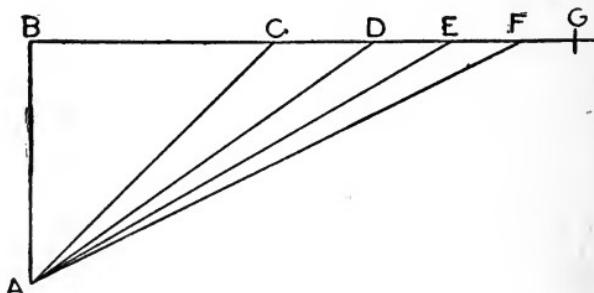


10. Draw a st. line  $\sqrt{3}$  in. in length.

11. Draw a st. line  $\sqrt{5}$  in. in length.

12. Draw any rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ . Describe equilateral  $\triangle$ s on the three sides. Find the areas of the  $\triangle$ s and compare that on the hypotenuse with the sum of those on the other two sides.

13.



**A**B is one inch in length,  $\angle$  **B** a rt.  $\angle$ , **BC** is one inch  
**BD** is cut off = **AC**, **BE** = **AD**, **BF** = **AE**, **BG** = **AF**, etc.  
 Show that **BD** =  $\sqrt{2}$  in., **BE** =  $\sqrt{3}$  in., **BF** =  $\sqrt{4} = 2$  in., **BG** =  $\sqrt{5}$  in., etc.

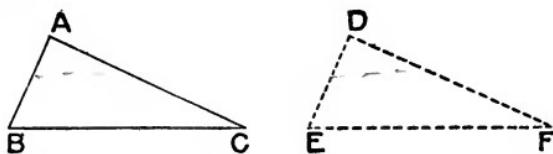
14. Construct a square equal to half a given square.
15. If a  $\perp$  be drawn from the vertex of a  $\triangle$  to the base, the difference of the squares on the segments of the base = the difference of the squares on the other two sides.  
Hence, prove that the altitudes of a  $\triangle$  pass through one point.
16. A is a given st. line. Find another st. line B, such that the difference of the square on A and B may be equal to the difference of two given squares.
- ~~✓~~ 17. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral cut at rt.  $\angle$ s, the sum of the squares on one pair of opposite sides equals the sum of the squares on the other pair.
18. The sum of the squares on the diagonals of a rhombus equals the sum of the squares on the four sides.
- ~~✓~~ 19. Five times the square on the hypotenuse of a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  equals four times the sum of the squares on the medians drawn to the other two sides.
20. In an isosceles rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  the sides have the ratios  $1:1:\sqrt{2}$ .
21. If the angles of a  $\triangle$  be  $90^\circ$ ,  $30^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$ , the sides have the ratios  $2:1:\sqrt{3}$ .
- ✓ 22. Divide a st. line into two parts such that the sum of the squares on the parts equals the square on another given st. line. When is this impossible?
- ✓ 23. In the st. line AB produced find a point C such that the sum of the squares on AC, BC equals the square on a given st. line.
- ✓ 24. Divide a given st. line into two parts such that the square on one part is double the square on the other part.
- ~~✓~~ 25. ABCD is a rect., and P is any point. Show that  $PA^2 + PC^2 = PB^2 + PD^2$ .
- ~~✓~~ 26. ABC is a  $\triangle$  rt.- $\angle$  d at A. E is a point on AC and F is a point on AB. Show that  $BE^2 + CF^2 = EF^2 + BC^2$ .

27. If two rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ s have the hypotenuse and a side of one respectively equal to the hypotenuse and a side of the other, the  $\triangle$ s are congruent.
28. The square on the side opposite an acute  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  is less than the sum of the squares on the other two sides.
29. The square on the side opposite an obtuse  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  is greater than the sum of the squares on the other two sides.
30. Construct a square that contains 20 square inches.
31. In the diagram of II—13, show that **KB**, **CD** cut at rt.  $\angle$  s.
32. In the diagram of II—13, if **KD** be joined, show that  $\triangle KAD = \triangle ABC$ .
33. In the diagram of II—13, the distance of **E** from **AC** = **AC** + **CB**.
34. **ABC** is an isosceles rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  in which **C** is the rt.  $\angle$ . **CB** is produced to **D** making **BD** = **CB**.  $\perp$ s to **AB**, **BD** at **A**, **D** respectively meet at **E**. Prove that **AE** = 2 **AB**.

## THEOREM 14

(Converse of Theorem 13)

If the square on one side of a triangle is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides, the angle contained by these sides is a right angle.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a  $\triangle$  in which  $BC^2 = AB^2 + AC^2$ .

*To prove that  $\angle A$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .*

*Construction.*—Make a rt.  $\angle D$  and cut off  $DE = AB$ ,  $DF = AC$ .

Join EF.

$$\begin{aligned} BC^2 &= AB^2 + AC^2 && \text{(Hyp.)} \\ &= DE^2 + DF^2 \\ &= EF^2 (\because D \text{ is a rt. } \angle). && \text{(II-13, p. 122.)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore BC = EF.$$

In  $\triangle s$  ABC, DEF,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} AB = DE, \\ AC = DF, \\ BC = EF, \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \angle A = \angle D. \quad \text{(I-4, p. 22.)}$$

$$\therefore \angle A \text{ is a rt. } \angle.$$

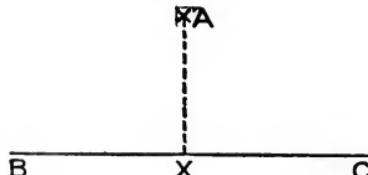
## 84.—Exercises

1. The sides of a  $\triangle$  are 3 in., 4 in. and 5 in. Prove that it is a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ .
2. The sides of a  $\triangle$  are 13 mm., 84 mm. and 85 mm. Prove that it is a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ .
3. In the quadrilateral ABCD,  $AB^2 + CD^2 = BC^2 + AD^2$ . Prove that the diagonals AC, BD cut at rt.  $\angle$ s.
4. If the sq. on one side of a  $\triangle$  be less than the sum of the squares on the other two sides, the  $\angle$  contained by these sides is an acute  $\angle$ . (Converse of § 83, Ex. 28.)
5. State and prove a converse of § 83, Ex. 29.
6. Using a tape-measure, or a knotted cord, and Ex. 1, draw a st. line at rt.  $\angle$ s to a given st. line.
7. Show that, if the sides of a  $\triangle$  are represented by  $m^2 + n^2$ ,  $m^2 - n^2$ ,  $2mn$ , where  $m$  and  $n$  are any numbers, the  $\triangle$  is rt.- $\angle$  d.

Use this result to find numbers representing the sides of a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ .

**85. Definition.**—If a perpendicular be drawn from a given point to a given straight line, the foot of the perpendicular is said to be the projection of the point on the line.

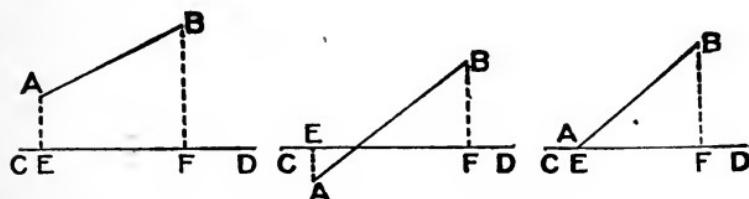
From the point A the  $\perp$  AX is drawn to the line BC.



The point X is the projection of the point A on the st. line BC.

86. **Definition.**—If from the ends of a given straight line perpendiculars be drawn to another given straight line, the segment intercepted on the second straight line is called the **projection of the first straight line on the second straight line.**

**AB** is a st. line of fixed length and **CD** another st. line. **AE, BF** are drawn  $\perp$  **CD**.



**EF** is the projection of **AB** on **CD**.

### 87.—Exercises

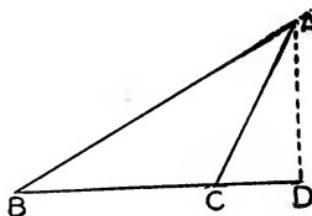
1. Show that a st. line of fixed length is never less than its projection on another st. line. In what case are they equal? In what case is the projection of one st. line on another st. line just a point?

2. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  having  $a = 36$  mm.,  $b = 40$  mm. and  $c = 45$  mm. Draw the  $\triangle$  and measure the projection of **AB** on **BC**. (*Ans.* 23.9 mm. nearly.)

3. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  having  $a = 5$  cm.,  $b = 7$  cm.,  $c = 10$  cm. Draw the  $\triangle$  and measure the projection of **AB** on **BC**. (*Ans.* 76 mm.)

## THEOREM 15

In an obtuse-angled triangle, the square on the side opposite the obtuse angle equals the sum of the squares on the sides that contain the obtuse angle increased by twice the rectangle contained by either of these sides and the projection on that side of the other.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a  $\triangle$  in which  $\angle C$  is obtuse, and CD is the projection of CA on CB.

*To prove that*  $AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2 + 2 BC \cdot CD$ .

*Proof.*— $\because ADB$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ,

$$\therefore AB^2 = BD^2 + AD^2. \quad (\text{II--13, p. 122.})$$

$$\therefore BD = BC + CD,$$

$$\therefore BD^2 = BC^2 + CD^2 + 2 BC \cdot CD. \quad (\text{II--10, p. 116.})$$

$$\therefore AB^2 = BC^2 + CD^2 + 2 BC \cdot CD + AD^2.$$

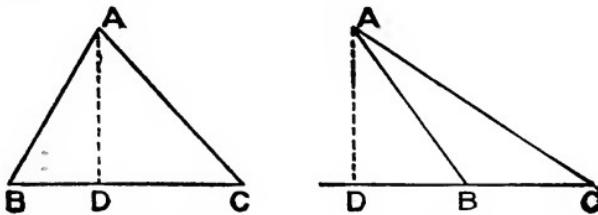
But  $\because ADC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ,

$$\therefore CD^2 + AD^2 = AC^2.$$

$$\therefore AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2 + 2 BC \cdot CD.$$

## THEOREM 16

In any triangle, the square on the side opposite an acute angle is equal to the sum of the squares on the sides which contain the acute angle diminished by twice the rectangle contained by either of these sides and the projection on that side of the other.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a  $\triangle$  in which  $\angle C$  is acute, and CD is the projection of CA on CB.

*To prove that*  $AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2 - 2 BC \cdot CD$ .

*Proof.*— $\because ADB$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ,

$$\therefore AB^2 = BD^2 + AD^2. \quad (\text{II--13, p. 122.})$$

$\because BD$  is the difference between BC and CD,

$$\therefore BD^2 = CD^2 + BC^2 - 2 BC \cdot CD. \quad (\text{II--11, p. 118.})$$

$$\therefore AB^2 = CD^2 + BC^2 - 2 BC \cdot CD + AD^2.$$

But,  $\because ADC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ,

$$\therefore CD^2 + AD^2 = AC^2.$$

$$\therefore AB^2 = AC^2 + BC^2 - 2 BC \cdot CD.$$

## 88.—Exercises

1. ABC is a  $\triangle$  having C an  $\angle$  of  $60^\circ$ . Show that sq. on AB = sq. on BC + sq. on AC - rect. BC.AC.

2. ABC is a  $\triangle$  having C an  $\angle$  of  $120^\circ$ . Show that sq. on AB = sq. on BC + sq. on AC + rect. BC.AC.

3. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$ , **CD** the projection of **CA** on **CB**, and **CE** the projection of **CB** on **CA**. Show that rect.  $\mathbf{BC} \cdot \mathbf{CD} =$  rect.  $\mathbf{AC} \cdot \mathbf{CE}$ .

4. In any  $\triangle$  the sum of the squares on two sides equals twice the square on half the base together with twice the square on the median drawn to the base.

NOTE.—Draw a  $\perp$  from the vertex to the base, and use II—15 and II—16.

5. In any quadrilateral the sum of the squares on the four sides exceeds the sum of the squares on the diagonals by four times the square on the st. line joining the middle points of the diagonals.

What does this proposition become when the quadrilateral is a ||gm?

6. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  having  $a = 47$  mm.,  $b = 62$  mm., and  $c = 84$  mm. **D**, **E**, **F** are the middle points of **BC**, **CA**, **AB** respectively. Calculate the lengths of **AD**, **BE** and **CF**. Test your results by drawing and measurement.

7. The squares on the diagonals of a quadrilateral are together double the sum of the squares on the st. lines joining the middle points of opposite sides.

8. If the medians of a  $\triangle$  intersect at **G**,

$$\mathbf{AB}^2 + \mathbf{BC}^2 + \mathbf{CA}^2 = 3(\mathbf{GA}^2 + \mathbf{GB}^2 + \mathbf{GC}^2).$$

9. **C** is the middle point of a st. line **AB**. **P** is any point on the circumference of a circle of which **C** is the centre. Show that  $\mathbf{PA}^2 + \mathbf{PB}^2$  is constant.

10. Two circles have the same centre. Prove that the sum of the squares of the distances from any point on the circumference of either circle to the ends of the diameter of the other is constant.

11. The square on the base of an isosceles  $\triangle$  is equal to twice the rect. contained by either of the equal sides and the projection on it of the base.

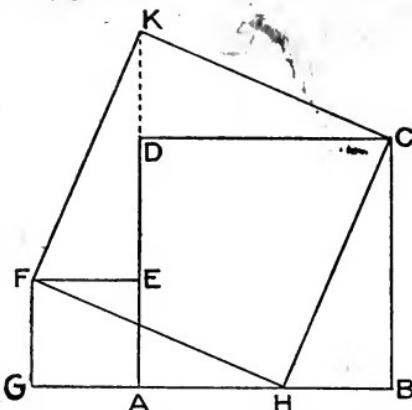
12. Prove II—13 from the following construction :—

Draw two squares, **ABCD**, **AEGF**, having **AD**, **AE** in the same st. line.

Cut off **GH** and **EK** each = **AB**.

Join **FH**, **HC**, **CK**, **KF**.

13. If two sides of a  $\triangle$  be unequal, the median drawn to the shorter side is greater than the median drawn to the longer side.



14. If, from any point **P** within  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\perp s$  **PX**, **PY**, **PZ** be drawn to **BC**, **CA**, **AB** respectively,

$$BX^2 + CY^2 + AZ^2 = CX^2 + AY^2 + BZ^2.$$

15. **D**, **E**, **F** are the middle points of **BC**, **CA**, **AB** respectively in  $\triangle ABC$ . Prove that

$$3(AB^2 + BC^2 + CA^2) = 4(AD^2 + BE^2 + CF^2).$$

16. **G** is the centroid of  $\triangle ABC$ , and **P** is any point. Show that

$$PA^2 + PB^2 + PC^2 = AG^2 + BG^2 + CG^2 + 3 PG^2.$$

17. Find the point **P** in the plane of the  $\triangle ABC$  such that the sum of the squares on **PA**, **PB**, **PC** may be the least possible.

18. Check the results in Exs. 2 and 3, § 87, by calculation.

19. If, in II—15, the obtuse  $\angle$  becomes greater and greater and finally becomes a st.  $\angle$ , what does the theorem become?

20. If, in the diagram of II—16, the  $\angle C$  becomes more and more acute and finally the point **A** comes down to the line **BC**, what does the theorem become?

### Miscellaneous Exercises

1. If a quadrilateral be bisected by each of its diagonals, it is a ||gm.
2. If any point **P** in the diagonal **AC** of the ||gm **ABCD** be joined to **B** and **D**, the ||gm is divided into two pairs of equal  $\triangle$ s.
3. The diagonals of a ||gm divide the ||gm into four equal parts.
4. If two sides of a quadrilateral are  $\parallel$  to each other, the st. line joining their middle points bisects the area of the quadrilateral.
5. If two sides of a quadrilateral are  $\parallel$  to each other, the st. line joining their middle points passes through the intersection of the diagonals.
6. If **P** is any point in the side **AB** of ||gm **ABCD**, and **PC**, **PD** are joined,

$$\triangle PAD + \triangle PBC = \triangle PDC.$$

7. Prove that the following method of bisecting a quadrilateral by a st. line drawn through one of its vertices is correct:—Let **ABCD** be the quadrilateral. Join **AC**, **BD**. Bisect **BD** at **E**. Through **E** draw **EF**  $\parallel$  **AC** and meeting **BC**, or **CD**, at **F**. Join **AF**. **AF** bisects the quadrilateral.

NOTE.—Join **AE**, and **EC**.

8. If the diagonals of ||gm **ABCD** cut at **O**, and **P** is any point within the  $\triangle AOB$ ,  $\triangle CPD = \triangle APB + \triangle APC + \triangle BPD$ .

NOTE.—Join **PO**.

9. **ABC** is an isosceles  $\triangle$  having **AB** = **AC**, and **D** is a point in the base **BC**, or **BC** produced. Prove that the difference between the squares on **AD** and **AC** = rect. **BD**.**DC**.

10. **P, Q, R, S** are respectively the middle points of the sides **AB, BC, CD, DA** in the quadrilateral **ABCD**. Prove that  $AB^2 + CD^2 + 2 PR^2 = CB^2 + DA^2 + 2 QS^2$ .

11. **BY**  $\perp$  **AC** and **CZ**  $\perp$  **AB** in  $\triangle ABC$ . Prove that  $BC^2 = \text{rect. } AB.BZ + \text{rect. } AC.CY$ .

12. **L, M, N** are three given points, and **PQ** a given st. line. Construct a rhombus **ABCD**, having its angular points **A, C** lying on the line **PQ**, and its three sides **AB, BC, CD** (produced if necessary) passing through **L, M, N** respectively.

13. Through **D** the middle point of the side **BC** of  $\triangle ABC$  a st. line **XDY** is drawn cutting **AB** at **X** and **AC** produced through **C** at **Y**. Prove  $\triangle AXY > \triangle ABC$ .

14. From the vertex **A** of  $\triangle ABC$  draw a st. line terminated in **BC** and equal to the average of **AB** and **AC**.

15. **AB** and **CD** are two equal st. lines that are not in the same st. line. Find a point **P** such that  $\triangle PAB \equiv \triangle PCD$ .

Show that, in general, two such points may be found.

16. **EF** drawn  $\parallel$  to the diagonal **AC** of  $\parallel\text{gm } ABCD$  meets **AD, DC**, or those sides produced, in **E, F** respectively. Prove that  $\triangle ABE = \triangle BCF$ .

17. Construct a rect. equal to a given square and such that one side equals a given st. line.

18. Find a point in one of two given intersecting st. lines such that the perpendiculars drawn from it to both the given lines may cut off from the other a segment of given length.

19. In the diagram of II—9, if **BD, BE** and **DE** be drawn,  $\parallel\text{gm } FK - \parallel\text{gm } HG = 2 \triangle EBD$ .

20. **ABC** is an isosceles  $\triangle$  in which **C** is a rt.  $\angle$ , and the bisector of  $\angle A$  meets **BC** at **D**. Prove that **CD = AB - AC**.

21. Place a st. line of given length between two given st. lines so as to be  $\parallel$  a given st. line.
22. Describe a  $\triangle =$  a given  $\parallel$ gm and such that its base = a given st. line, and one  $\angle$  at the base = a given  $\angle$ .
23. Construct a  $\parallel$ gm equal and equiangular to a given  $\parallel$ gm, and such that one side is equal to a given st. line.
24. Construct a  $\parallel$ gm equal and equiangular to a given  $\parallel$ gm, and such that its altitude is equal to a given st. line.
25. ABCD is a quadrilateral. On BC as base construct a  $\parallel$ gm equal in area to ABCD, and having one side along BA.
26. Squares ABDE, ACFG have a common  $\angle$  A, and A, B, C are in the same st. line. AH is drawn  $\perp$  BG and produced to cut CE at K. Prove that EK = KC.
27. Make a rhombus ABCD in which  $\angle A = 100^\circ$ . A circle described with centre A and radius AB cuts BC, CD at E, F respectively. Prove that AEF is an equilateral  $\triangle$ .
28. A st. line AB is bisected at C and divided into two unequal parts at D. Prove that  $AD^2 + DB^2 = 2AD \cdot DB + 4CD^2$ .
29. ABCD is a quadrilateral in which  $AB \parallel CD$ . Prove that
- $$AC^2 + BD^2 = AD^2 + BC^2 + 2AB \cdot CD.$$
30. Trisect a given  $\parallel$ gm by st. lines drawn through one of its angular points.
31. The base BC of the  $\triangle ABC$  is trisected at D, E. Prove that
- $$AB^2 + AC^2 = AD^2 + AE^2 + 4DE^2.$$
32. ACB, ADB are two rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ s on the same side of the same hypotenuse AB, and AX, BY are  $\perp$  CD produced. Prove that
- $$XC^2 + CY^2 = XD^2 + DY^2.$$

33. **ABC** is an isosceles  $\triangle$ , and  $XY$  is  $\parallel BC$  and terminated in  $AB$ ,  $AC$ . Prove

$$BY^2 = CY^2 + BC \cdot XY.$$

34. Any rect. = half the rect. contained by the diagonals of the squares on two of its adjacent sides.

35. **ABCD** is a  $\parallel$ gm in which  $BD = AB$ . Prove that  $BD^2 + 2BC^2 = AC^2$ .

36. A rect. **BDEC** is described on the side **BC** of a  $\triangle ABC$ . Prove that

$$AB^2 + AE^2 = AC^2 + AD^2.$$

37. **BE**, **CD** are squares described externally on the sides **AB**, **AC** of a  $\triangle ABC$ . Prove that

$$BC^2 + ED^2 = 2(AB^2 + AC^2).$$

NOTE.—Draw  $EX$ ,  $CY \perp DA$ ,  $AB$  respectively, and rotate  $\triangle ABC$  to the position in which  $AB$  coincides with  $AE$ .

38. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  in which  $AX \perp BC$ , and **D** is the middle point of **BC**. Prove that the difference of the squares on **AB**, **AC** =  $2BC \cdot DX$ .

39. **BC** is the greatest and **AB** the least side in  $\triangle ABC$ . **D**, **E**, **F** are the middle points of **BC**, **CA**, **AB** respectively; and **X**, **Y**, **Z** are the feet of the  $\perp$ s from **A**, **B**, **C** to the opposite sides. Prove that  $CA \cdot EY = AB \cdot FZ + BC \cdot DX$ .

40. **ABCD** is a rect. in which **E** is any point in **BC** and **F** is any point in **CD**. Prove that  $ABCD = 2\triangle AEF + BE \cdot DF$ .

41. **A** and **B** are two fixed points. Find the position of a point **P** such that  $PA^2 + PB^2$  may be the least possible.

42. From a given point **A** draw three st. lines **AB**, **AC**, **AD** respectively equal to three given st. lines, and such that **B**, **C**, **D** are in the same st. line and **BC** = **CD**.

43. Find the locus of a point such that the sum of the squares on its distances from two given points is constant.

44. Find the locus of a point such that the difference of the squares on its distances from two given points is constant.

45. **ABCD** is a ||gm, **P** any point in **BC**, and **Q** any point in **AP**. Prove that  $\triangle BQC = \triangle PQD$ .

46. **ABCD** is a quadrilateral having **AB**  $\parallel$  **CD**, and **AB** + **CD** = **BC**. Prove that the bisectors of  $\angle$ s **B** and **C** intersect on **AD**.

47. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  in which  $\angle A$  is a rt.  $\angle$ , and **AB** > **AC**. Squares **BCDE**, **CAHF**, **ABGK** are described outwardly to the  $\triangle$ . Prove that

$$\mathbf{DG}^2 - \mathbf{EF}^2 = 3(\mathbf{AB}^2 - \mathbf{AC}^2).$$

48. In the hypotenuse **AB** of a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle ACB$ , points **D** and **E** are taken such that **AD** = **AC** and **BE** = **BC**. Prove that

$$\mathbf{DE}^2 = 2 \mathbf{BD} \cdot \mathbf{AE}.$$

49. A st. line is 8 cm. in length. Divide it into two parts such that the difference of the squares on the parts = 5 sq. cm.

50. **A** and **B** are two given points and **CD** is a given st. line. Find a point **P** in **CD** such that the difference of the squares on **PA** and **PB** may be equal to a given rectangle.

51. **AD** is a median of the acute- $\angle$ d  $\triangle ABC$ ; **DX**  $\perp$  **AB**, **DY**  $\perp$  **AC**. Prove that

$$\mathbf{BA} \cdot \mathbf{AX} + \mathbf{CA} \cdot \mathbf{AY} = 2 \mathbf{AD}^2.$$

52. Find a point **P** within a given quadrilateral **KLMN** such that  $\triangle PLM = \triangle PMN = \triangle PNK$ .

53. **ABC** is an isosceles  $\triangle$  in which **AB** = **AC**. **AP**  $\parallel$  **BC**. Prove that the difference between **PB**<sup>2</sup> and **PC**<sup>2</sup> equals 2 **AP**.**BC**.

54. If the sum of the squares on the diagonals of a quadrilateral be equal to the sum of the squares on the sides, the quadrilateral is a ||gm.

55. **D** is a point in the side **BC** of a  $\triangle ABC$  such that  $AB^2 + AC^2 = 2AD^2 + 2BD^2$ .  $AX \perp BC$ . Prove that either  $BD = DC$ , or  $2DX = BC$ .

56. **ABCD** is a ||gm, and **P** is a point such that  $PA^2 + PC^2 = PB^2 + PD^2$ . Prove that **ABDC** is a rectangle.

57. **A, B, C, D** are four fixed points. Find the locus of a point **P** such that  $PA^2 + PB^2 + PC^2 + PD^2$  is constant.

58. **A, B, C, D** are four fixed points. Find the locus of a point **P** such that  $PA^2 + PB^2 = PC^2 + PD^2$ .

59. **D** and **E** are taken in the base **BC** of  $\triangle ABC$  so that  $BD = EC$ . Through **D, E** st. lines are drawn  $\parallel AB$  and  $AC$  forming two ||gms with **AD, AE** as diagonals. Prove the ||gms equal in area.

60. A st. line **EF** drawn  $\parallel$  to the diagonal **AC** of a ||gm **ABCD** meets **AB** in **E** and **BC** in **F**. Prove that **BD** bisects the quadrilateral **DEBF**.

61. **ABC** is an isosceles rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  in which  $AB = AC$ . **E** is taken in **AB** and **D** in **AC** produced such that  $EB = CD$ . Prove that  $\triangle EAD < \triangle ABC$ .

62. **L** and **M** are respectively the middle points of the diagonals **BD** and **AC** of a quadrilateral **ABCD**. **ML** is produced to meet **AD** at **E**. Prove that  $\triangle EBC =$  half the quadrilateral.

63. **DE** is  $\parallel BC$  the base of  $\triangle ABC$ , and meets **AB, AC** at **D, E** respectively. **DE** is produced to **F** making  $DF = BC$ . Prove that  $\triangle AEF = \triangle BDE$ .

64. Construct the minimum  $\triangle$  which has a fixed vertical  $\angle$ , and its base passing through a fixed point situated between the arms of the  $\angle$ .

65. **BE, BD** are the bisectors of the interior and exterior  $\angle$ s at **B** in the  $\triangle ABC$ .  $AE \perp BE$  and  $CD \perp BD$ . **AE** and **CD** intersect at **F**. Prove that rect. **BEFD** =  $\triangle ABC$ .

66.  $ABCD$  is a square. St. lines drawn through  $A$  and  $D$  make with  $BC$  produced in both directions the  $\triangle EFG$ .  $EX \perp FG$ . Prove that  $BC(EX + FG) = 2 \triangle EFG$ .

67. The  $\triangle ABC$  is rt.- $\angle$  at  $C$ , and the bisectors of  $\angle A$  and  $B$  meet at  $E$ .  $ED \perp AB$ . Prove that rect.  $AD \cdot DB = \triangle ABC$ .

68. Calculate the area of an equilateral  $\triangle$  of which the side is 2 inches.

69. If the side of an equilateral  $\triangle$  is  $a$  inches, show that its area is  $\frac{a^2\sqrt{3}}{4}$  sq. in.

70. Calculate the side of an equilateral  $\triangle$  of which the area is 10 sq. cm.

71. Construct a  $\triangle$  having two sides 4 cm. and 4.5 cm., and the area 7 sq. cm.

Show that there are two solutions.

72.  $M$  is a point in the side  $QR$  of  $\triangle PQR$  such that  $QM = 2 MR$ . Prove that  $PQ^2 + 2 PR^2 = 3 PM^2 + 6 MR^2$ .

73. The rectangle contained by the two segments of a st. line is a maximum when the st. line is bisected. (Use Ex. 8 (1), § 81.)

74. The sum of the squares on the two segments of a st. line is a minimum when the st. line is bisected. (Use Ex. 8 (2), § 81.)

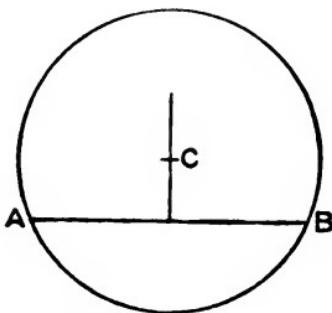
## BOOK III

### THE CIRCLE

89. A definition of a circle was given in § 32, and from the explanation given in § 66 we may take the following alternative definition of it:—

A **circle** is the locus of the points that lie at a fixed distance from a fixed point.

90. As the centre of a circle is a point equally distant from the two ends of any chord of the circle, the three following statements follow at once from I—22, p. 78:—

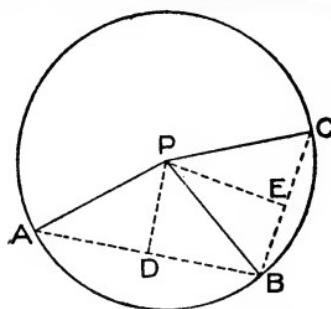


- (a) The straight line drawn from the centre of a circle perpendicular to a chord bisects the chord.
- (b) The straight line drawn from the centre of a circle to the middle point of a chord is perpendicular to the chord.
- (c) The right bisector of a chord of a circle passes through the centre of the circle.

As an exercise the pupil should give independent proofs of theorems (a), (b) and (c).

## THEOREM 1

If from a point within a circle more than two equal straight lines are drawn to the circumference, that point is the centre.



*Hypothesis.*— $P$  is a point within the circle  $ABC$  such that  $PA = PB = PC$ .

*To prove that  $P$  is the centre of the circle.*

*Construction.*—Join  $AB$ ,  $BC$ , and from  $P$  draw  $PD \perp AB$  and  $PE \perp BC$ .

*Proof.*— $\because PA = PB$ ,

$\therefore P$  is in the right bisector of  $AB$ . (I—22, p. 78.)

And  $\therefore PD$  produced is the locus of the centres of all circles through  $A$  and  $B$ .

$\therefore$  the centre of the circle  $ABC$  is somewhere in  $PD$ .

In the same manner it may be shown that the centre of the circle  $ABC$  is somewhere in  $PE$ .

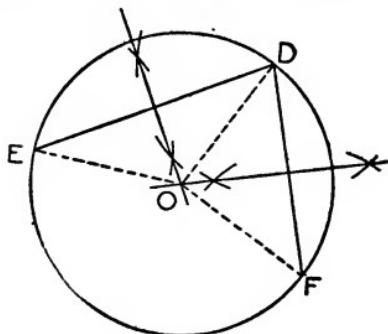
But  $P$  is the only point common to  $PD$  and  $PE$ .

$\therefore P$  is the centre of circle  $ABC$ .

## CONSTRUCTIONS

## PROBLEM 1

To find the centre of a given circle.



Let **DEF** be the given circle.

*Construction.*—From any point **D** on the circumference draw two chords **DE, DF**.

Draw the right bisectors of **DE, DF** meeting at **O**.

**O** is the centre of circle **DEF**.

Join **OF, OE, OD**

*Proof.*— $\because$  **O** is on the right bisector of **DE**,

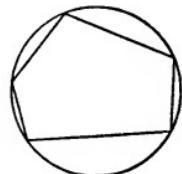
$$\therefore \text{OE} = \text{OD}. \quad (\text{I}-22, \text{p. 78.})$$

Similarly **OD = OF**.

$$\therefore \text{OE} = \text{OD} = \text{OF},$$

$\therefore$  **O** is the centre of the circle. (III—1, p. 142.)

91. **Definitions.**—If a circle passes through all the vertices of a rectilineal figure, it is said to be **circumscribed** about the figure.



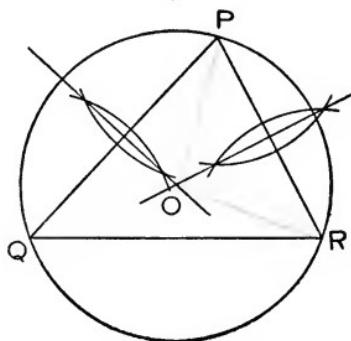
Four points so situated that a circle may be described to pass through all of them are said to be **conyclic**.

If the four vertices of a quadrilateral are on the circumference of the same circle, it is said to be a **cyclic quadrilateral**.

The centre of a circle circumscribed about a triangle is called the **circumcentre** of the triangle.

### PROBLEM 2

To circumscribe a circle about a given triangle.



Let  $PQR$  be the given  $\triangle$ .

*Construction.*—Draw the right bisectors of  $PQ$ ,  $PR$  meeting at  $O$ .

$\therefore O$  is on the right bisector of  $PQ$ .

$\therefore OP = OQ.$  (I—22, p. 78.)

Similarly  $OP = OR.$

$\therefore OP = OQ = OR,$

And a circle described with centre  $O$  and radius  $OP$  will pass through  $Q$  and  $R$ , and be circumscribed about the  $\triangle$ .

92.—**Exercises**

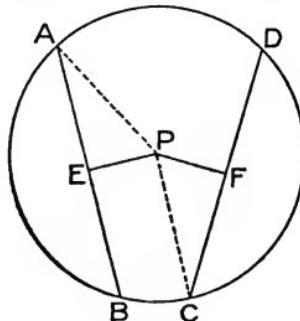
1. Through a given point within a circle draw a chord that is bisected at the given point.
2. Complete a circle of which an arc only is given.
3. Circumscribe a circle about a given square.
4. Circumscribe a circle about a given rectangle.
5. Describe a circle with a given centre to cut a given circle at the ends of a diameter.
6. The locus of the middle points of a system of  $\parallel$  chords in a circle is a diameter of the circle.
7. If two circles cut each other, the st. line joining their centres bisects their common chord at rt.  $\angle$ s.
8. If each of two equal st. lines has one extremity on one of two concentric circles, and the other extremity on the other circle, the st. lines subtend equal  $\angle$ s at the common centres.
9. A st. line cuts the outer of two concentric circles at E, F; and the inner at G, H. Prove that  $EG = FH$ .
10. A st. line cannot cut a circle at more than two points.
11. Two chords of a circle cannot bisect each other unless both are diameters.
12. A circle cannot be circumscribed about a  $\parallel$ gm unless the  $\parallel$ gm is a rectangle.
13. A st. line which joins the middle points of two  $\parallel$  chords in a circle is  $\perp$  to the chords.
14. If two circles cut each other, a st. line through a point of intersection,  $\parallel$  to the line of centres and terminated in the circumferences, is double the line joining the centres.

15. If two circles cut each other, any two  $\parallel$  st. lines through the points of intersection, and terminated by the circumferences, are equal to each other.

16. If two circles cut each other, any two st. lines through one of the points of intersection, making equal  $\angle$ s with the line of centres and terminated by the circumferences, are equal to each other.

### THEOREM 2

Chords that are equally distant from the centre of a circle are equal to each other.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is a circle of which P is the centre and AB, CD are two chords such that the  $\perp$ s PE, PF from P to AB, CD respectively are equal to each other.

*To prove that*  $AB = CD$ .

*Construction.*—Join AP, CP.

*Proof.*—Rotate  $\triangle PFC$  about point P making PF fall on PE.

$$\therefore PF = PE,$$

$\therefore$  point F falls on point E.

$$\therefore \angle PFC = \angle PEA,$$

$\therefore FC$  falls along EA.

hence,  $\therefore PC$  is a radius and

$\therefore C$  remains on the circumference,

$C$  must fall on  $A$ .

$\therefore FC$  coincides with  $EA$ ,

and  $\therefore FC = EA$ ,

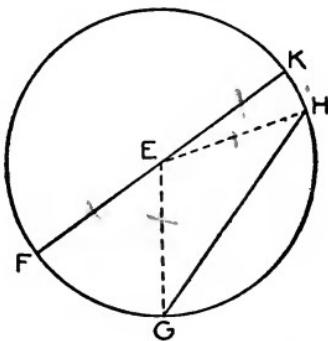
But  $CD = 2 CF$ ,

and  $AB = 2 AE$ ,

$\therefore CD = AB$ .

### THEOREM 3

In a circle any chord which does not pass through the centre is less than a diameter.



Ex 3

*Hypothesis.*—In the circle  $FGH$ ,  $GH$  is a chord which does not pass through the centre and  $FK$  is a diameter.  $E$  is the centre.

*To prove that  $GH < FK$ .*

*Construction.*—Join  $EG$ ,  $EH$ .

*Proof.*—  $\because GE = EF$  and  $EH = EK$ ,

$$\therefore GE + EH = FK.$$

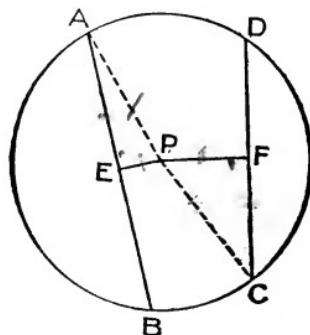
$\therefore GEH$  is a  $\triangle$ ,

$$\therefore GH < GE + EH. \quad (I-16, p. 59.)$$

And  $\therefore GH < FK$ .

## THEOREM 4

Of two chords in a circle the one which is nearer to the centre is greater than the one which is more remote from the centre.



*Hypothesis.*—P is the centre of a circle ABC, and AB, CD are two chords such that PE, the distance of AB from the centre, is less than PF, the distance of CD from the centre.

*To prove that*  $AB > CD$ .

*Construction.*—Join PA, PC.

*Proof.*—  $\because$  PEA is a rt.  $\angle$ ,

$$\therefore AE^2 + EP^2 = AP^2. \quad (\text{II}-13, \text{p. 122.})$$

$$\text{Similarly } CF^2 + FP^2 = CP^2.$$

$$\text{But } \because AP = CP,$$

$$\therefore AP^2 = CP^2.$$

$$\text{And } \therefore AE^2 + EP^2 = CF^2 + FP^2.$$

$$\therefore EP < PF,$$

$$\therefore EP^2 < PF^2.$$

$$\text{And } \therefore AE^2 > CF^2,$$

$$\therefore AE > CF.$$

$$\text{But } AB = 2 AE,$$

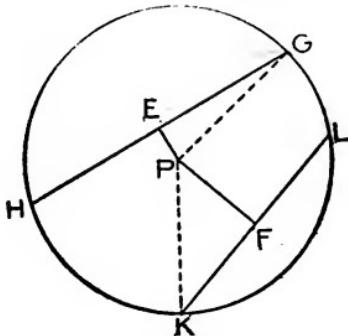
$$\text{and } CD = 2 CF,$$

$$\therefore AB > CD.$$

## THEOREM 5

(Converse of Theorem 4)

If two chords of a circle are unequal, the greater is nearer to the centre than the less.



*Hypothesis.*—Chord  $GH >$  chord  $KL$ , and  $PE, PF$  are respectively perpendiculars from the centre  $P$  to  $GH, KL$ .

*To prove that  $PE < PF$ .*

*Construction.*—Join  $PG, PK$ .

*Proof.*—  $\because PEG$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ,

$$GE^2 + EP^2 = GP^2. \quad (\text{II}-13, \text{ p. } 122.)$$

Similarly  $PF^2 + FK^2 = PK^2$ .

$$\therefore GE^2 + EP^2 = PF^2 + FK^2.$$

But  $\because GH = 2GE$  and  $KL = 2KF$ ,

And also  $GH > KL$ ,

$$\therefore GE > KF.$$

$$\therefore GE^2 > KF^2.$$

Hence,  $EP^2 < PF^2$ .

And  $\therefore EP < PF$ .

## 93.—Exercises

1. If two chords of a circle are equal to each other, they are equally distant from the centre. (Converse of Theorem 2.)
2. A chord 6 cm. in length is placed in a circle of radius 4 cm. Calculate the distance of the chord from the centre.
3. A chord  $a$  inches long is placed in a circle of radius  $b$  inches. Find an algebraic expression for the distance of the chord from the centre.
4. In a circle of radius 5 cm. a chord is placed at a distance of 3 cm. from the centre. Calculate the length of the chord.
5. Through a given point within a circle draw the shortest chord.
6. In a circle of radius 4 cm., a point  $P$  is taken at the distance 3 cm. from the centre. Calculate the length of the shortest chord through  $P$ .
7. The length of a chord 2 cm. from the centre of a circle is 5.5 cm. Find the length of a chord 3 cm. from the centre. Verify your result by measurement.
8. In a circle of radius 5 cm., two  $\parallel$  chords of lengths 8 cm. and 6 cm. are placed. Find the distance between the chords. Show that there are two solutions.
9.  $ACB$  is a diameter, and  $C$  the centre of a circle.  $D$  is any point on  $AB$ , or on  $AB$  produced, and  $P$  is any point on the circumference except  $A$  and  $B$ . Show that  $DP$  is intermediate in magnitude between  $DA$  and  $DB$ .
10.  $O$  is the centre of a circle, and  $P$  is any point. If two st. lines be drawn through  $P$ , cutting the circle, and

making equal  $\angle$ s with  $PO$ , the chords intercepted on these lines by the circumference are equal to each other.

11.  $O$  is the centre of a circle, and  $P$  is any point. On two lines drawn through  $P$  chords  $AB$ ,  $CD$  are intercepted by the circumference. If the  $\angle$  made by  $AB$  with  $PO > \angle$  made by  $CD$  with  $PO$ , the chord  $AB <$  chord  $CD$ .

12. From any point in a circle which is not the centre equal st. lines can be drawn to the circumference only in pairs.

13. Find the locus of the middle points of chords of a fixed length in a circle.

14.  $K$  and  $L$  are two fixed points. Find a point  $P$  on a given circle such that  $KP^2 + LP^2$  may be the least possible.

15. Chords equally distant from the centre of a circle subtend equal  $\angle$ s at the centre.

16. The nearer to the centre of two chords of a circle subtends the greater  $\angle$  at the centre.

**ANSWERS** :—2, 26.5 mm. nearly ; 4, 8 cm.; 6, 5.3 c.m. nearly ; 7, 32 mm. nearly ; 8, 1 cm. or 7 cm.

---



---

## ANGLES IN A CIRCLE

## THEOREM 6

The angle which an arc of a circle subtends at the centre is double the angle which it subtends at any point on the remaining part of the circumference.

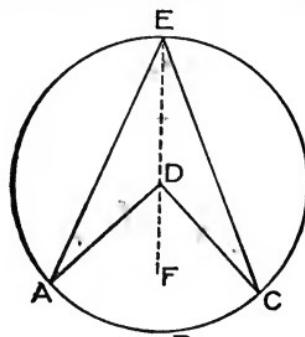


FIG. 1

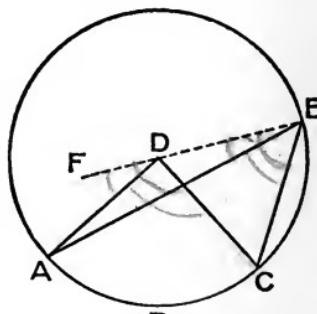


FIG. 2

*Hypothesis.*—ABC is an arc of a circle, D the centre, and E any point on the remaining part of the circumference.

*To prove that*  $\angle ADC = 2 \angle AEC$ .

*Construction.*—Join ED and produce ED to any point F.

*Proof.*—

*In both figures:*—

$$\text{In } \triangle DAE, \because DA = DE$$

$$\therefore \angle DAE = \angle DEA \quad (\text{I}-3, \text{ p. 20}).$$

$\therefore$  ADF is an exterior  $\angle$  of  $\triangle ADE$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \angle ADF &= \angle DAE + \angle DEA \quad (\text{I}-10, \text{ p. 45.}) \\ &= 2 \angle DEA. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly  $\angle CDF = 2 \angle DEC$ .

*In Fig. 1 :—*

$$\angle ADF = 2 \angle DEA$$

$$\angle CDF = 2 \angle DEC,$$

$$\text{adding, } \angle ADC = 2(\angle DEA + \angle DEC) \\ = 2 \angle AEC.$$

*In Fig. 2 :—*

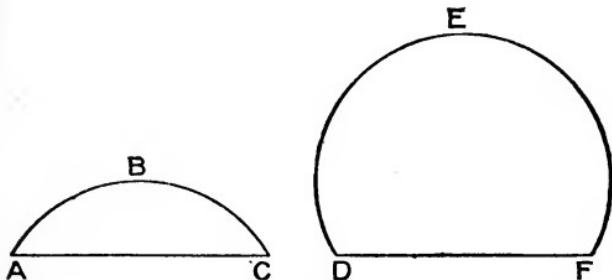
$$\angle CDF = 2 \angle DEC,$$

$$\angle ADF = 2 \angle DEA,$$

$$\text{subtracting, } \angle ADC = 2(\angle DEC - \angle DEA) \\ = 2 \angle AEC.$$


---

**94. Definitions.**—The figure bounded by an arc of a circle and the chord which joins the ends of the arc is called a **segment of a circle**.



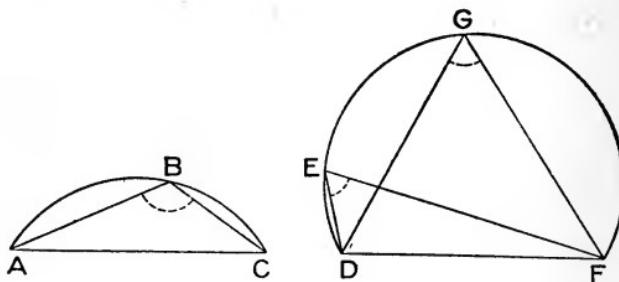
**ABC, DEF** are segments of circles.

A semi-circle is a particular case of a segment.

An arc is called a **major arc** or a **minor arc** according as it is greater or less than half the circumference.

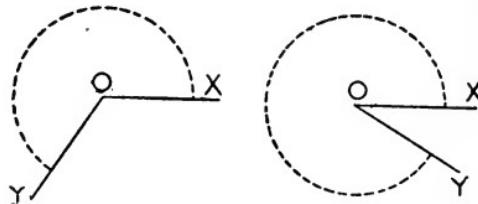
A segment is called a **major segment** or a **minor segment** according as the arc of the segment is a major or a minor arc.

95. **Definitions.**—If the ends of a chord of a segment are joined to any point on the arc of the segment, the angle between the joining lines is called an **angle in the segment**.



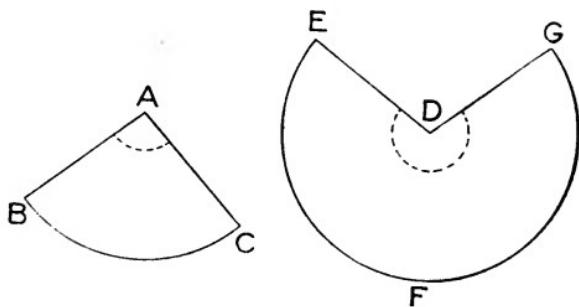
**ABC** is an  $\angle$  in the segment **ABC**, and **DEF** is an  $\angle$  in the segment **DEF**. **DGF** is also an  $\angle$  in the segment **DEF**.

96. **Definitions.**—An angle which is greater than two right angles but less than four right angles is called a **reflex angle**.



A straight line starting from the position **OX** and rotating in the direction opposite to that of the hands of a clock to the position **OY**, in either diagram, traces out the reflex angle **XOY**.

The figure bounded by two radii of a circle, and either of the arcs intercepted by the radii is called a **sector of the circle**.



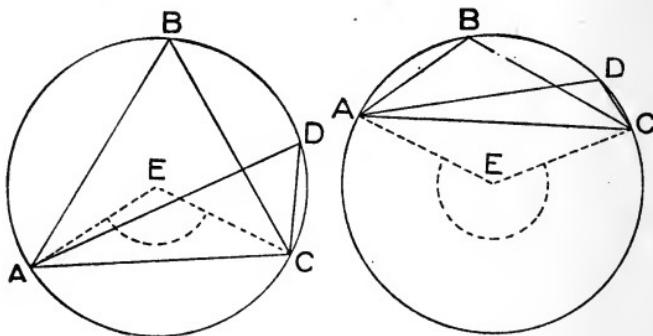
**ABC, DEFG** are sectors of circles.

**BAC** is the  $\angle$  of the sector **ABC**, and the reflex  $\angle$  **EDG** is the  $\angle$  of the sector **DEFG**.

---

## THEOREM 7

Angles in the same segment of a circle are equal to each other.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC, ADC are two  $\angle$ s in the same segment ABDC.

*To prove that*  $\angle \text{ABC} = \angle \text{ADC}$ .

*Construction.*—Find E the centre of the circle. Join AE, EC.

*Proof.*—The  $\angle \text{AEC}$  at the centre and the  $\angle$ s ABC and ADC at the circumference are subtended by the same arc,

$$\therefore \angle \text{ABC} = \frac{1}{2} \angle \text{AEC}, \quad (\text{III}-6, \text{p. } 152.)$$

$$\text{and } \angle \text{ADC} = \frac{1}{2} \angle \text{AEC},$$

$$\therefore \angle \text{ABC} = \angle \text{ADC}.$$

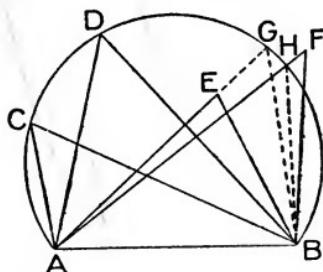
Alternative statement of the preceding theorem:—

The angle in a given segment is constant in magnitude for all positions of the vertex of the angle on the arc of the segment.

## THEOREM 8

(Converse of Theorem 7)

The locus of all points on one side of a straight line at which the straight line subtends equal angles is the arc of a segment of which the straight line is the chord.



*Hypothesis.*—**AB** is a st. line, and **C** one of the points. Circumscribe a circle about the  $\triangle ACB$ .

*To prove that* arc **ACB** is the locus of all points on the same side of **AB** at which **AB** subtends  $\angle$ s equal to  $\angle ACB$ .

*Construction.*—Take any other point **D** on arc **ACB**, **E** any point within the segment, and **F** any point without the segment.

Join **AD**, **DB**, **AE**, **EB**, **AF**, **FB**.

*Proof.*—Then  $\angle ADB = \angle ACB$ . (III—7, p. 156.)

Produce **AE** to meet arc **ACB** at **G**. Join **BG**.

$\therefore$  **AEB** is an exterior  $\angle$  of  $\triangle EGB$ ,

$$\therefore \angle AEB > \angle AGB; \quad (\text{I}-10, \text{Cor.}, \text{p. 45.})$$

$$\text{but } \angle AGB = \angle ACB, \quad (\text{III}-7, \text{p. 156.})$$

$$\therefore \angle AEB > \angle ACB;$$

In a similar manner it may be shown that

$$\angle AFB < \angle ACB;$$

and consequently arc **ACB** is the locus.

*The vertices of equal angles subtended by the same straight line are on the same side of the straight line.*

97. **Definition:**—If the three angles of one triangle are respectively equal to the three angles of another triangle, the triangles are said to be **similar.** |||

98. There are two conditions implied when figures are said to be similar: not only are the angles of one respectively equal to the angles of the other, but a certain relationship must exist between the lengths of the sides of the two figures. For triangles, it will be shown in Book IV that, if one of these conditions is given, the other is also true. For figures of more than three sides this is not the case, and a definition including both conditions must be given. (See § 131.)

The symbol ||| may be used for the word similar, or for "is similar to."

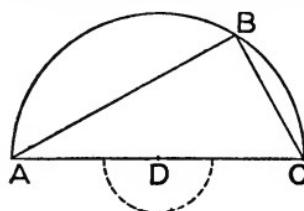
### 99.—Exercises

- 1. Prove Theorem 6 when the arc is half the circumference.
- 2. Construct a circular arc on a chord of 3 inches and having the apex 3 inches from the chord. Calculate the radius of the circle.
- 3. If the chord of an arc is  $a$  inches, and the distance of its apex from the chord  $b$  inches, show that the radius of the circle is  $\frac{a^2 + 4b^2}{8b}$ .
- 4. Two chords **AOB**, **COD**, intersect at a point **O** within the circle. Show that **AOC**, **BOD** are similar  $\triangle$ s. **BOC**, **AOD** are also similar  $\triangle$ s. Read the segments that contain the equal  $\angle$ s.
- 5. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle, and the bisector of  $\angle A$  meets the circumference again at **D**. Show that the st. line drawn from **D**  $\perp$  **BC** is a diameter.

- ✓ 6. A circle is divided into two segments by a chord equal to the radius. Show that the  $\angle$  in the major segment is  $30^\circ$  and that in the minor segment is  $150^\circ$ .
7. The locus of the vertices of the rt.  $\angle$ s of all rt.- $\angle$ d  $\Delta$ s on the same hypotenuse is a circle.
8. Prove Theorem 6 when the arc is greater than half the circumference.
- ✓ 9. PQR is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle. The bisector of  $\angle P$  cuts QR at D and meets the circle at E. Prove that  $\triangle PQD \sim \triangle PER$ .
- ✓ 10. DPQ and EPQ are two fixed circles, and D, P and E are in the same st. line. The bisector of  $\angle DQE$  meets DE at F. Show that the locus of F is an arc of a circle.
- ✓ 11. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle cut at rt.  $\angle$ s, the  $\perp$  from their intersection on any side bisects the opposite side.
- 0 12. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle cut at rt.  $\angle$ s, the distance of the centre of the circle from any side is half the opposite side.
- 0 13. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle cut each other at rt.  $\angle$ s, the  $\angle$ s which a pair of opposite sides of the quadrilateral subtend at the centre of the circle are supplementary.
- 0 14. XYZ, XYV are two equal circles, the centre of each being on the circumference of the other. ZXV is a st. line. Prove that YZV is an equilateral  $\triangle$ .
15. EFGH is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle and  $EF = GH$ . Prove that  $EG = FH$ .
- 0 16. ABCD is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle; the diagonals AC, BD cut at E; F the centre of the circle is within the quadrilateral. Prove that  $\angle AFB + \angle CFD = 2\angle AEB$ .

## THEOREM 9

The angle in a semi-circle is a right angle.



*Hypothesis.*—ABC is an  $\angle$  in the semi-circle ABC, of which D is the centre.

*To prove that ABC is a rt.  $\angle$ .*

*Proof.*—The  $\angle$  ABC at the circumference, and the st.  $\angle$  ADC at the centre, would each subtend the same arc, if the circle were complete.

$$\therefore \angle ABC = \frac{1}{2} \angle ADC. \quad (\text{III}-6, \text{p. } 152.) \\ = \text{a rt. } \angle.$$

## THEOREM 10

(a) The angle in a major segment of a circle is acute.

(b) The angle in a minor segment of a circle is obtuse.

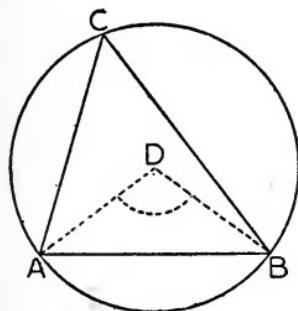


Fig 1

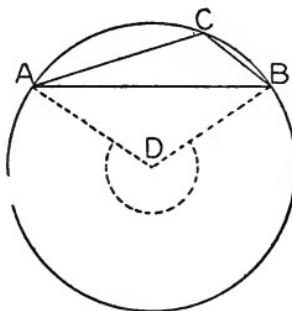


Fig.2

(a) *Hypothesis*.— $\angle ACB$  is an  $\angle$  in a major segment of a circle. (Fig. 1.)

*To prove that*  $\angle ACB$  is acute.

*Construction*.—Join **A** and **B** to the centre **D**.

*Proof*.— $\angle ACB$  at the circumference and  $\angle ADB$  at the centre stand on the same arc,

$$\therefore \angle ACB = \frac{1}{2} \angle ADB. \quad (\text{III--6, p. 152.})$$

But  $\angle ADB$  is  $<$  a st.  $\angle$ .

$\therefore \angle ACB$  is acute.

(b) *Hypothesis*.— $\angle ACB$  is an  $\angle$  in a minor segment of a circle. (Fig. 2.)

*To prove that*  $\angle ACB$  is obtuse.

*Construction*.—Join **A** and **B** to the centre **D**.

*Proof*.—

$$\angle ACB = \frac{1}{2} \text{ the reflex } \angle ADB. \quad (\text{III--6, p. 152.})$$

$\therefore \angle ACB$  is obtuse.

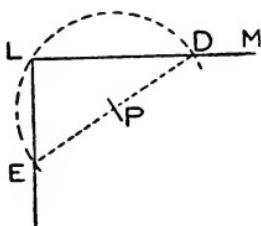
## 100.—Exercises

1. A circle described on the hypotenuse of a rt.- $\angle$   $d$   $\triangle$  as diameter passes through the vertex of the rt.  $\angle$ . (Converse of III-9).

2. Circles described on two sides of a  $\triangle$  as diameters, intersect on the third side, or the third side produced.

Where is the point of intersection when the circles are described on the equal sides of an isosceles  $\triangle$ ?

3.  $LM$  is a st. line and  $L$  a point from which it is required to draw a  $\perp$  to  $LM$ .



*Construction.*—With a convenient point  $P$  as centre describe a circle to pass through  $L$  and cut  $LM$  at  $D$ . Join  $DP$ , and produce  $DP$  to cut the circle at  $E$ . Join  $LE$ .

Prove  $LE \perp LM$ .

4.  $EF$ ,  $EG$  are diameters of two circles  $FEH$ ,  $GEH$  respectively. Show that  $FHG$  is a st. line.

5.  $ST$  is a diameter of the circle  $SVT$ . A circle is described with centre  $S$  and radius  $ST$ . Show that any chord of this latter circle drawn from  $T$  is bisected by the circle  $SVT$ .

6. Chords of a given circle are drawn through a given point. Find the locus of the middle points of the chords when the given point is (a) on the circumference, (b) within the circle, (c) without the circle.

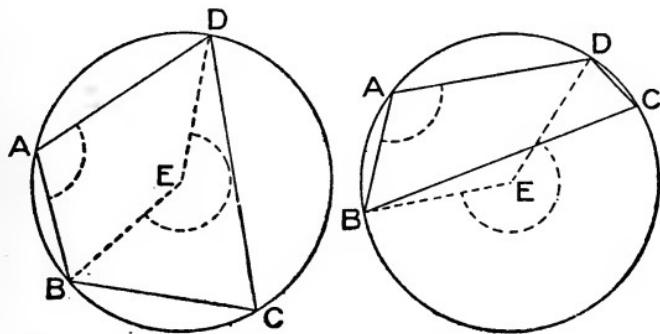
7.  $F$  is any point on the arc of a semi-circle of which  $DE$  is a diameter. The bisectors of  $\angle$ s  $FED$ ,  $FDE$  meet at  $P$ . Find the locus of  $P$ .

8. **F** is a point on the arc of a semi-circle of which **DE** is a diameter.  $\mathbf{F}\mathbf{G} \perp \mathbf{D}\mathbf{E}$ . Show that the  $\triangle$ s **FDG**, **FEG**, **FDE** are similar.

9. **PQRS** is a st. line and circles described on **PR**, **QS** as diameters cut at **E**. Prove that  $\angle \mathbf{P}\mathbf{E}\mathbf{Q} = \angle \mathbf{R}\mathbf{E}\mathbf{S}$ .

### THEOREM 11

If a quadrilateral is inscribed in a circle, its opposite angles are supplementary.



*Hypothesis.*—**ABCD** is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle.

*To prove that*  $\angle \mathbf{A} + \angle \mathbf{C} = 2$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

*Construction.*—Find the centre **E**. Join **BE**, **ED**.

*Proof.*— $\angle \mathbf{BED}$  at the centre and  $\angle \mathbf{C}$  at the circumference are subtended by the same arc **BAD**.

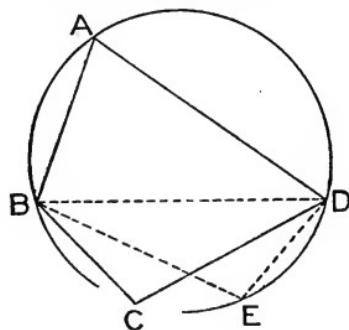
$$\therefore \angle \mathbf{C} = \frac{1}{2} \angle \mathbf{BED}. \quad (\text{III--6, p. 152.})$$

Similarly  $\angle \mathbf{A} = \frac{1}{2}$  reflex  $\angle \mathbf{BED}$ .

Hence  $\angle \mathbf{A} + \angle \mathbf{C} = \frac{1}{2}$  the sum of the two  $\angle$ s **BED** at the centre  $= \frac{1}{2}$  of 4 rt.  $\angle$ s  
 $= 2$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

## THEOREM 12

If the opposite angles of a quadrilateral are supplementary, its vertices are concyclic.



*Hypothesis.* — **ABCD** is a quadrilateral in which  $\angle A + \angle C = 2$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

*To prove that A, B, C, D are on the circumference of a circle.*

*Construction.* — Draw a circle through the three points **A**, **B**, **D**. On this circumference and on the side of **BD** remote from **A** take a point **E**. Join **BE**, **ED**.

*Proof.* —  $\because$  **ABED** is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle,

$$\therefore \angle A + \angle E = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle\text{s}; \quad (\text{III--11, p. 163.})$$

$$\text{but } \angle A + \angle C = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle\text{s}. \quad (\text{Hyp.})$$

$$\therefore \angle A + \angle E = \angle A + \angle C,$$

$$\text{and } \therefore \angle E = \angle C.$$

Consequently, as **C**, **E** are on the same side of **BD**, the circle **BADE** passes through **C**. (III—8, p. 157.)

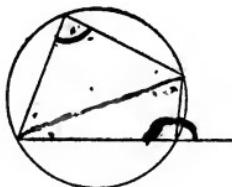
## 101.—Exercises

1. If one side of an inscribed quadrilateral be produced, the exterior  $\angle$  thus formed at one vertex equals the interior  $\angle$  at the opposite vertex of the quadrilateral.

State and prove the converse.

2. From a point  $O$  without a circle two st. lines  $OAB$ ,  $OCD$  are drawn cutting the circumference at  $A, B, C, D$ .

Show that  $\triangle$ s  $OBC$ ,  $OAD$  are similar, and that  $\triangle$ s  $OAC$ ,  $OBD$  are similar.



3. If a  $\parallel$ gm be inscribed in a circle, the  $\parallel$ gm is a rect.

4.  $A, D, C, E, B$  are five successive points on the circumference of a circle; and  $A, B$  are fixed. Show that the sum of the  $\angle$ s  $ADC$ ,  $CEB$  is the same for all positions of  $D, C, E$ .

5. A circle is circumscribed about an equilateral  $\triangle$ . Show that the  $\angle$  in each segment outside the  $\triangle$  is an  $\angle$  of  $120^\circ$ .

6. A scalene  $\triangle$  is inscribed in a circle. Show that the sum of the  $\angle$ s in the three segments outside the  $\triangle$  is  $360^\circ$ .

7. A quadrilateral is inscribed in a circle. Show that the sum of the  $\angle$ s in the four segments outside the quadrilateral is  $540^\circ$ .

8.  $P$  is a point on the diagonal  $KM$  of the  $\parallel$ gm  $KLMN$ . Circles are described about  $PKN$  and  $PLM$ . Show that  $LN$  passes through the other point of intersection of the circles.

9. A circle drawn through the middle points of the sides of a  $\triangle$  passes through the feet of the  $\perp$ s from the vertices to the opposite sides.

10. If the opposite sides of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle be produced to meet at  $L$  and  $M$ , and about the  $\triangle$ s

*Lerm  
Prob*

so formed outside the quadrilateral circles be described intersecting again at  $N$ , then  $L, M, N$  are in the same st. line.

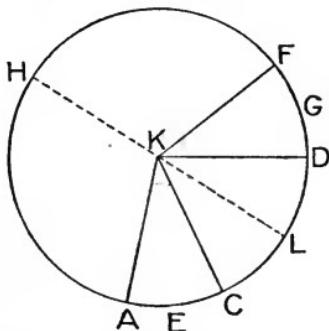
- ✓ 11. In a  $\triangle DEF$ ,  $DX \perp EF$  and  $EY \perp DF$ . Prove that  $\angle XYF = \angle DEF$ .
- ✓ 12.  $PQRS, PQTV$  are circles and  $SPV, RQT$  are st. lines. Prove that  $SR \parallel VT$ .
- ✓ 13. The st. lines that bisect any  $\angle$  of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle and the opposite exterior  $\angle$  meet on the circumference.
- 14.  $XYZ$  is a  $\triangle$ ;  $YD \perp ZX$ , and  $DE \perp XY$ ;  $ZF \perp XY$  and  $FG \perp ZX$ . Show that  $EG \parallel YZ$ .
- 15.  $EGD, FGD$  are two circles with centres  $H, K$  respectively.  $EGF$  is a st. line.  $EH, FK$  meet at  $P$ . Show that  $H, K, D, P$  are concyclic.
- 16.  $KL, MN$  are two  $\parallel$  chords in a circle;  $KE, NF$  two  $\perp$  chords in the same circle. Show that  $LF \perp ME$ .
- 17. The bisectors of the  $\angle$ s formed by producing the opposite sides of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle are  $\perp$  to each other.
- 18.  $HKM, LKM$  are two circles, and  $HKL$  is a st. line.  $HM, LM$  cut the circles again at  $E, F$  respectively, and  $HF$  cuts  $LE$  at  $G$ . Show that a circle may be circumscribed about  $MEGF$ .
- 19.  $PQRS$  is a quadrilateral and the bisectors of the  $\angle$ s  $P, Q; Q, R; R, S; S, P$  meet at four points. Show that a circle may be circumscribed about the quadrilateral thus formed.
- 20.  $EF$  is the diameter of a semi-circle and  $G, H$  any two points on its arc.  $EH, FG$  cut at  $K$  and  $EG, FH$  cut at  $L$ . Show that  $KL \perp EF$ .

21.  $\text{DE}$  is the diameter,  $O$  the centre and  $P$  any point on the arc of a semi-circle.  $PM \perp DE$ . Show that the bisector of  $\angle MPO$  passes through a fixed point.

22.  $PQR$  is a  $\triangle$  and  $\text{PDQ}$ ,  $\text{PFQ}$  are two circles cutting  $PR$  at  $D, F$  and  $QR$  at  $E, G$ . Prove that  $DE \parallel FG$ .

### THEOREM 13

If two angles at the centre of a circle are equal to each other, they are subtended by equal arcs.



*Hypothesis.*— $\angle AKC, \angle DKF$  are equal  $\angle$ s at the centre  $K$  of the circle  $ACD$ .

*To prove that* arc  $AEC$  equals arc  $DGF$ .

*Construction.*—Draw the diameter  $HKL$  bisecting  $\angle CKD$ .

*Proof.*—Suppose the circle to be folded along the diameter  $HKL$ , and the semi-circle  $HFL$  will coincide throughout with the semi-circle  $HAL$ .

$$\therefore \angle LKD = \angle LKC,$$

$$\therefore KD \text{ falls along } KC;$$

and  $\therefore D$  falls on  $C$ .

$$\therefore \angle DKF = \angle CKA,$$

$$\therefore KF \text{ falls along } KA;$$

and  $\therefore F$  falls on  $A$ .

$$\therefore \text{the arc } DGF \text{ coincides with the arc } CEA.$$

$$\therefore \text{arc } DGF = \text{arc } CEA.$$

## 102. — Exercises

1. If two arcs of a circle be equal to each other, they subtend equal  $\angle$ s at the centre. (Prove either by indirect demonstration, or by the construction and method used in III—13.)
2. If two  $\angle$ s at the circumference of a circle be equal to each other, they are subtended by equal arcs.
3. If two arcs of a circle be equal to each other, they subtend equal  $\angle$ s at the circumference.
4. In equal circles equal  $\angle$ s at the centres (or circumferences) stand on equal arcs.
5. In equal circles equal arcs subtend equal  $\angle$ s at the centres (or circumferences).
6. If two arcs of a circle (or of equal circles) be equal, they are cut off by equal chords.
7. If two chords of a circle be equal to each other, the major and minor arcs cut off by one are respectively equal to the major and minor arcs cut off by the other.
8. If two sectors of a circle have equal  $\angle$ s at the centre, the sectors are congruent.
9. Bisect a given arc of a circle.
10. Parallel chords of a circle intercept equal arcs.  
Show also that the converse is true.
11. If two equal circles cut one another, any st. line drawn through one of the points of intersection will meet the circles again at two points which are equally distant from the other point of intersection.
12. The bisectors of the opposite  $\angle$ s of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle meet the circumference at the ends of a diameter.
13. If two  $\angle$ s at the centre of a circle be supplementary, the sum of the arcs on which they stand is equal to half the circumference.
14. If any number of  $\angle$ s be in a segment, their bisectors all pass through one point.

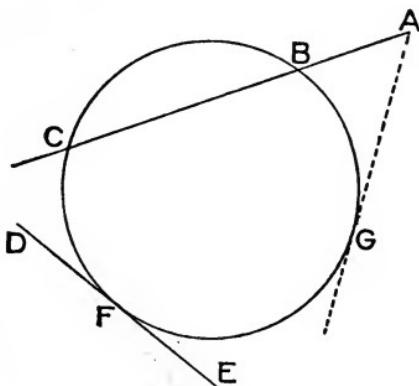
## TANGENTS AND CHORDS

**103. Definitions.**—Any straight line which cuts a circle is called a **secant**.

A straight line which, however far it may be produced, has one point on the circumference of a circle, and all other points without the circle is called a **tangent** to the circle.

A tangent is said to **touch** the circle.

The common point of a tangent and circle, that is, the point where the tangent touches the circle, is called the **point of contact**.



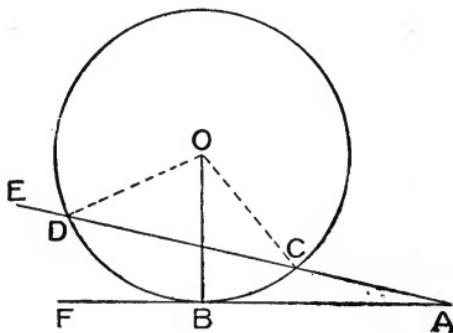
**ABC** is a secant drawn to the circle **BCF** from the point **A**.

**D<sup>F</sup>E** is a tangent to the circle **BCF**, touching the circle at the point of contact **F**.

If the secant **ABC** rotate about the point **A** until the two points **B**, **C** where it cuts the circle coincide at **G**, the secant becomes a tangent having **G** for the point of contact.

## THEOREM 14

The radius drawn to the point of contact of a tangent is perpendicular to the tangent.



*Hypothesis.*—**ABF** is a tangent to the circle **CBD** at the point **B**, **O** is the centre and **OB** the radius drawn to the point of contact.

*To prove that OB is  $\perp$  AF.*

*Construction.*—From any point **A**, except **B**, in **AF** draw a secant **AE** cutting the circle in **C** and **D**. Join **OC**, **OD**.

*Proof.*—  $\because OD = OC,$   
 $\therefore \angle ODC = \angle OCD.$  (I—3, p. 20.)

But, st.  $\angle EDC =$  st.  $\angle DCA,$   
 $\therefore \angle ODE = \angle OCA.$

Rotate **AE** about **A** until it coincides with **AF**. As **AE** rotates about **A** the  $\angle$ s **ODE**, **OCA** are continually equal to each other and finally  $\angle ODE$  becomes  $\angle OBF$  and  $\angle OCA$  becomes  $\angle OBA$ .

$\therefore \angle OBF = \angle OBA.$   
 and  $\therefore OB \perp AF.$

**Cor. 1.**—Only one tangent can be drawn at any point on the circumference of a circle.

∴ only one st. line can be  $\perp$  to the radius at that point.

Hence, also:—The straight line drawn perpendicular to a radius at the point where it meets the circumference is a tangent.

**Cor. 2.**—The perpendicular to a tangent at its point of contact passes through the centre of the circle.

∴ only one st. line can be  $\perp$  to the tangent at that point.

**Cor. 3.**—The perpendicular from the centre on a tangent passes through the point of contact.

∴ only one  $\perp$  can be drawn from a given external point to a given st. line.

---

#### 104.—Exercises

1. Draw a tangent to a given circle from a given point on the circumference.
2. Describe a circle with its centre on a given st. line **DE** to pass through a given point **P** in **DE** and touch another given st. line **DF**.
3. Find the locus of the centres of all circles that touch a given st. line at a given point.
4. Describe a circle to pass through a given point and touch a given st. line at a given point.
5. Tangents at the ends of a diameter are  $\parallel$ .

6. **C** is any point on the tangent of which **A** is the point of contact. The st. line from **C** to the centre **O** cuts the circumference at **B**. **AD** is  $\perp$  **OC**. Show that **BA** bisects the  $\angle$  **DAC**.

7. Find the locus of the centres of all circles which touch two given  $\parallel$  st. lines.

✓ 8. Draw a circle to touch two given  $\parallel$  st. lines and pass through a given point between the  $\parallel$ s. Show that two such circles may be drawn.

✓ 9. To a given circle draw two tangents, each of which is  $\parallel$  to a given st. line.

10. To a given circle draw two tangents, each of which is  $\perp$  to a given st. line.

11. Give an alternative proof for III—14 by supposing the radius **OB** drawn to the point of contact of the tangent **ABF** not  $\perp$  to **AF** and drawing **OG**  $\perp$  **AF**.

12. Two tangents to a circle meet each other. Prove that they are equal to each other.

13. **EF** is a diameter of a circle and **EG** is a chord. **EH** is a chord bisecting the  $\angle$  **FEG**. Prove that the tangent at **H** is  $\perp$  **EG**.

14. Draw a circle to touch a given st. line at a given point and have its centre on another given st. line.

15. Draw a tangent to a given circle making a given  $\angle$  with a given st. line.

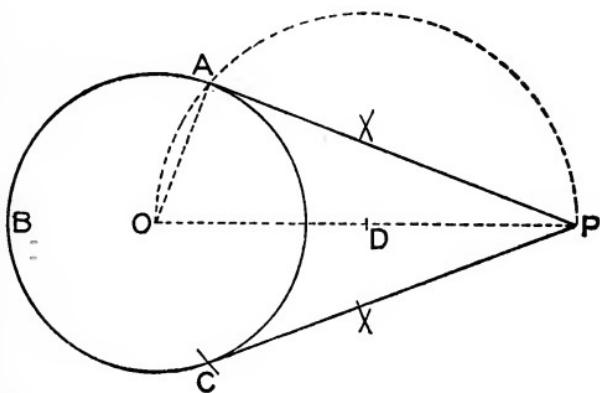
Show that, in general, four such tangents may be drawn.



## CONSTRUCTION

## PROBLEM 3

To draw a tangent to a given circle from a given point without the circle.



Let **ABC** be the given circle, and **P** the given point.

It is required to draw a tangent from **P** to the circle **ABC**.

Join **P** to the centre **O**. Bisect **OP** at **D**. With centre **D** and radius **DO**, describe a circle cutting the circle **ABC** at **A** and **C**. Join **PA**, **PC**.

Either **PA** or **PC** is a tangent to the given circle.

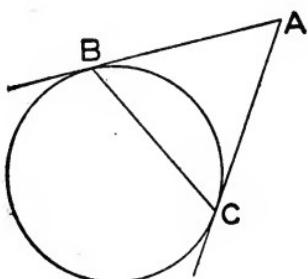
Join **OA**.

**OAP** is an  $\angle$  in a semi-circle, and is  $\therefore$  a rt.  $\angle$ . (III—9, p. 160.)

$\therefore$  **PA** is a tangent. (III—14, Cor. 1, p. 171.)

In the same manner it may be shown that **PC** is a tangent.

105. **Definition.**—The straight line joining the points of contact of two tangents to a circle is called the **chord of contact** of the tangents.



**BC** is the chord of contact of the tangent **AB, AC.**

### 106.—Exercises

1. Draw a circle of radius 4 cm. Take a point 9 cm. from the centre of the circle. From this point draw two tangents to the circle. Measure the length of each tangent and check your result by calculation.
2. Draw a circle of radius 5 cm. Mark a point 7 cm. from the centre. From this point draw two tangents to the circle and measure the  $\angle$  between the tangents. ( $91^\circ$  nearly.)
3. Draw a circle with a radius of 3 cm. Mark any point **A** on the circumference, and from this point draw a tangent **AB** 4 cm. long. Measure the distance of **B** from the centre and check your result.
4. Draw a circle with 43 mm. radius. Draw any st. line through the centre, and find a point, in this line, from which the tangent to the circle will be 5 cm. in

length. Measure the distance of the point from the centre and check your result.

5. Mark two points **A** and **B** 7 cm. apart. Draw two st. lines from **A** such that the length of the perpendicular from **B** to either of them is 4 cm.

6. Draw a circle of radius 6 cm. Mark a point **P** 4 cm. from the centre. Draw a chord through **P** such that the perpendicular from the centre to the chord is 3 cm. in length. Measure the length of the chord and check your result by calculation.

7. Draw a circle of radius 36 mm. Mark any point **P** without the circle. Draw a st. line from **P** such that the chord cut off on it by the circle is 4 cm. in length.

8. Draw a circle of radius 47 mm. Mark a point **P** 4 cm. from the centre. Draw two chords through **P**, each of which is 65 mm. in length.

✓ 9. If from a point without a circle two tangents be drawn, the st. line drawn from this point to the centre bisects the chord of contact and cuts it at rt.  $\angle$ s.

✓ 10. If a quadrilateral be circumscribed about a circle, the sum of one pair of opposite sides equals the sum of the other pair.

✓ 11. Through a given point draw a st. line, such that the chord intercepted on the line by a given circle is equal to a given st. line.

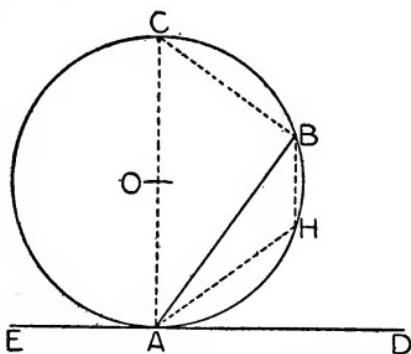
✓ 12. If a ||gm be circumscribed about a circle, the ||gm is a rhombus.

13. If two tangents to a circle be  $\parallel$ , their chord of contact is a diameter.

- ✓ 14. If two  $\parallel$  tangents to a circle be cut by a third tangent to the circle at **A**, **B**; show that **AB** subtends a rt.  $\angle$  at the centre.
- ✓ 15. If a quadrilateral be circumscribed about a circle, the  $\angle$ 's subtended at the centre by a pair of opposite sides are supplementary.
16. To a given circle draw two tangents containing an  $\angle$  equal to a given  $\angle$ .
17. Find the locus of the points from which tangents drawn to a given circle are equal to a given st. line.
- ✓ 18. Find a point **P** in a given st. line, such that the tangent from **P** to a given circle is of given length. What is the condition that this is possible?
- ✓ 19. **E** is a point outside a circle the centre of which is **D**. In **DE** produced find a point **F**, such that the length of the tangent from **F** may be twice that of the tangent from **E**.
20. Two tangents, **LM**, **LN** are drawn to a circle; **P** is any point on the circumference outside the  $\triangle LMN$ . Prove that  $\angle LMP + \angle LNP$  is constant.
21. Find the  $\angle$  between the tangents to a circle from a point whose distance from the centre is equal to a diameter.
22. Show that all equal chords of a given circle touch a fixed concentric circle.
23. From a given point without a circle draw a st. line such that the part intercepted by the circle ~~subtends a~~ rt.  $\angle$  at the centre.
-

## THEOREM 15

If at one end of a chord of a circle a tangent is drawn, each angle between the chord and the tangent is equal to the angle in the segment on the other side of the chord.



*Hypothesis.*—**AB** is a chord and **EAD** a tangent to the circle **ABC**.

*To prove that*  $\angle DAB = \angle ACB$  *and that*  $\angle EAB = \angle AHB$ .

*Construction.*—From **A** draw the diameter **AOC**. Join **BC**. Join any point **H** in the arc **AHB** to **A** and **B**.

*Proof.*— $\because$  **ABC** is an  $\angle$  in a semi-circle,

$\therefore$  **ABC** is a rt.  $\angle$ . (III—9, p. 160.)

$\therefore \angle BAC + \angle BCA =$  a rt.  $\angle$  (I—10, p. 45.)  
 $= \angle CAD$ . (III—14, p. 170.)

Take away the common  $\angle BAC$ ,

$\therefore \angle BAD = \angle ACB$ ,

$= \angle$  in the segment **ACB**.

$\because$  **AHBC** is an inscribed quadrilateral,

$\therefore \angle H + \angle C =$  a st.  $\angle$  (III—11, p. 163.)  
 $=$  st.  $\angle$  **DAE**.

But  $\angle C = \angle BAD$ .

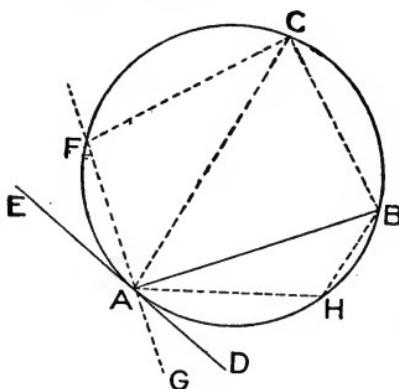
$\therefore \angle BAE = \angle H$

$= \angle$  in the segment **AHB**.

## THEOREM 15

(Alternative Proof)

If at one end of a chord of a circle a tangent is drawn, each angle between the chord and the tangent is equal to the angle in the segment on the other side of the chord.



*Hypothesis.*—**AB** is a chord and **EAD** a tangent to the circle **ABC**.

*To prove that*  $\angle DAB = \angle ACB$ , and that  $\angle EAB = \angle AHB$ .

*Construction.*—In arc **AFC** take any point **F**. Join **CF**, and draw the line **FAG**.

*Proof.*— $\because$  **AFCB** is an inscribed quadrilateral,

$\therefore \angle FCB$  is supplementary to  $\angle FAB$ ,  
(III—11, p. 163.)

But,  $\angle BAG$  is supplementary to  $\angle FAB$ .

$\therefore \angle BAG = \angle FCB$ .

These  $\angle$ s are equal however near **F** is to **A**.

Let **F** move along the circumference towards **A** and finally coincide with **A**.

The line **FAG** rotates about the point **A** and finally coincides with **EAD**. The  $\angle GAB$  becomes  $\angle DAB$  and  $\angle FCB$  becomes  $\angle ACB$ .

$$\therefore \angle DAB = \angle ACB.$$

$\because \angle EAB$  is supplementary to  $\angle DAB$ ,  
and,  $\angle AHB$  is supplementary to  $\angle ACB$ .

(III—11, p. 163.)

$$\therefore \angle EAB = \angle AHB.$$

### 107.—Exercises

1. **AB** is a chord of a circle and **AC** is a diameter. **AD** is  $\perp$  to the tangent at **B**. Show that **AB** bisects the  $\angle DAC$ .

2. Two circles intersect at **A** and **B**. Any point **P** on the circumference of one circle is joined to **A** and **B** and the joining lines are produced to meet the circumference of the other circle at **C**, **D**. Show that **CD** is  $\parallel$  to the tangent at **P**.

3. **LMN** is a  $\triangle$ . Show how to draw the tangent at **L** to the circumscribed circle, without finding the centre of this circle.

4. If either of the  $\angle$ s which a st. line, drawn through one end of a chord of a circle, makes with the chord is equal to the  $\angle$  in the segment on the other side of the chord, the st. line is a tangent. (*Converse of III—15.*)

5. The tangent at a point **P** on a circle meets the chord **MN** produced through **N**, at **Q**. Prove  $\angle Q = \angle PNM - \angle PMN$ .

6. A tangent drawn  $\parallel$  to a chord of a circle bisects the arc cut off by the chord.

✓ 7. **FGE, HKE** are two circles, and **FEH, GEK** two st. lines. Prove that **FG, KH** meet at an  $\angle$  which = the  $\angle$  between the tangents to the circles at **E**.

8. **G** is the middle point of an arc **EGF** of a circle. Show that **G** is equidistant from the chord **EF** and the tangent at **E**.

9. A st. line **EF** is trisected in **G, H**, and an equilateral  $\triangle$  **PGH** is described on **GH**. Show that the circle **FGP** touches **EP**.

10. **D, E, F** are respectively the points of contact of the sides **MN, NL, LM** of a  $\triangle$  circumscribed about a circle. **DG, EH** are respectively  $\perp$  **EF, DF**. Prove **GH \parallel LM**.

11. The tangent at **L** to the circumscribed circle of  $\triangle$  **LMN** meets **MN** produced at **D**, and the internal and external bisectors of the  $\angle$  **MLN** meet **MN** at **E, F** respectively. Prove that **D** is the middle point of **EF**.

12. **GEF, HEF** are two circles and **GEH** is a st. line. The tangents at **G, H** meet at **K**. Show that **K, G, F, H** are concyclic.

13. Points **P, Q** are taken on two st. lines **LM, LN** so that **LP + LQ =** a given st. line. Prove that the circle **PLQ** passes through a second fixed point.

14. **E, F, G, H** are the points of contact of the sides **XY, YZ, ZV, VX** of a quadrilateral circumscribed about a circle. If **X, Y, Z, V** are concyclic, show that **EG \perp FH**.

15. **XYZV** is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle, and **XZ, YV** cut at **E**. Prove that the tangent at **E** to the circle **XZY** is  $\parallel$  **ZV**.

16. **F** is the point of contact of a tangent **EF** to the circle **FGH**. **GK** drawn  $\parallel$  **EF** meets **FH**, or **FH** produced,

at **K**. Show that the circle through **G**, **K**, **H** touches **FG** at **G**.

17. If from an external point **P** a tangent **PT** and a secant **PMN** be drawn to a circle, the  $\triangle$ s **PTM**, **PNT** are similar.

18. Use III—15 to prove that the tangents drawn to a circle from an external point are equal.

19. From an external point **T** a tangent **TR** and a secant **TQP** through the centre are drawn to a circle. Prove that  $\angle T + 2\angle TRQ = \text{a rt. } \angle$ .

20. The tangents **OT**, **OS** from a fixed point **O** to a given circle contain an  $\angle$  of  $x$  degrees. A third tangent is drawn to the circle at any point on the minor arc **TS**. Show that the portion of this tangent intercepted by **OT** and **OS** subtends an  $\angle$  of  $(90 - \frac{x}{2})$  degrees at the centre.

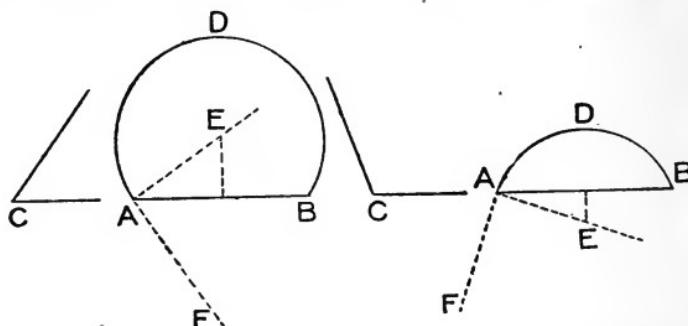
Show that if the moving point be taken on the major arc **TS**, the  $\angle$  at the centre will be  $(90 + \frac{x}{2})$  degrees.

---

## CONSTRUCTIONS

## PROBLEM 4

On a given straight line to construct a segment containing an angle equal to a given angle.



Let **AB** be the given st. line, and **C** the given  $\angle$ .

*Construction.*—Make  $\angle BAF = \angle C$ .

Draw  $AE \perp AF$ .

Draw the right bisector of **AB** and produce it to cut **AE** at **E**.

$\because E$  is in the right bisector of **AB**, it is equidistant from **A** and **B**.  
(I—22, p. 78.)

With centre **E** and radius **EA** describe the arc **ADB**.  
**ADB** is the required arc.

*Proof.*— $\because AF \perp AE$ ,

$\therefore AF$  is a tangent to the circle **ADB**.

(III—14, Cor. 1, p. 171.)

$\because AB$  is a chord drawn from the point of contact of the tangent **AF**,

$\therefore \angle$  in segment **ADB** =  $\angle FAB$ .  
(III—15, p. 177.)

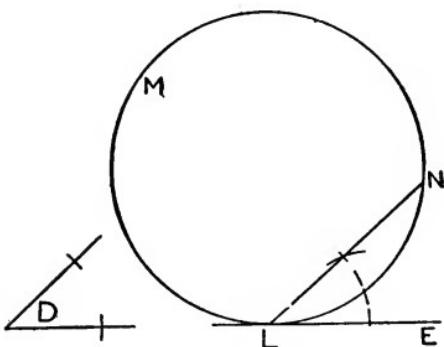
But,  $\angle FAB = \angle C$ ,

(Const.)

$\therefore \angle$  in segment **ADB** =  $\angle C$ .

## PROBLEM 5

From a given circle to cut off a segment containing an angle equal to a given angle.



Let  $\text{LMN}$  be the given circle, and  $D$  the given  $\angle$ .

*Construction.*—Draw a tangent  $LE$  to the given circle.

At  $L$  make the  $\angle ELN = \angle D$ .

$\text{LMN}$  is the required segment.

*Proof.*— $\because LE$  is a tangent, and  $LN$  a chord,

$\therefore \angle$  in segment  $\text{LMN} = \angle NLE$ .

(III—15, p. 177.)

But,  $\angle NLE = \angle D$ .

(*Const.*)

$\therefore \angle$  in segment  $\text{LMN} = \angle D$ .

## 108.—Exercises

1. On st. lines each 4 cm. in length, describe segments containing  $\angle$ s of (a)  $45^\circ$ , (b)  $150^\circ$ , (c)  $72^\circ$ , (d)  $116^\circ$ . (*Use the protractor for (c) and (d).*)

2. On a given base construct an isosceles  $\triangle$  with a given vertical  $\angle$ .

3. Divide a circle into two segments such that the  $\angle$  in one segment is (a) twice, (b) three times, (c) five times, (d) seven times the  $\angle$  in the other segment.

4. Construct two  $\triangle$ s  $ABC_1$ ,  $ABC_2$  on the same base  $AB = 4$  cm., having  $\angle AC_1B = \angle AC_2B = 50^\circ$ , and  $AC_1 = AC_2 = 5$  cm.

Prove that  $\angle ABC_1 + \angle ABC_2 = 2$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

5. Construct a  $\triangle LMN$  having  $LM = 5$  cm.,  $\angle N = 110^\circ$ , and the median from  $N = 2$  cm.

Measure the greatest and least values the median from  $N$  could have, with  $LM = 5$  cm., and  $\angle N = 110^\circ$ .

6. Construct a  $\triangle$  having its base 5 cm., its vertical  $\angle$   $70^\circ$ , and its altitude 3 cm.

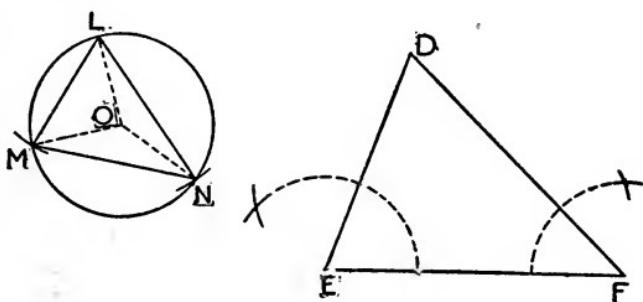
7. Construct a  $\triangle XYZ$ , having  $XY = 4$  cm.,  $\angle Z = 40^\circ$ , and  $XZ + ZY = 10$  cm.

8. Construct a  $\triangle XYZ$ , having  $XY = 6$  cm.,  $\angle Z = 50^\circ$  and  $XZ - ZY = 4$  cm.

9. Through a given point draw a st. line to cut off from a given circle a segment containing an  $\angle$  equal to a given  $\angle$ .

## PROBLEM 6

In a given circle to inscribe a triangle similar to a given triangle.



Let  $\triangle LMN$  be the given circle, and  $\triangle DEF$  the given  $\triangle$ .

*Construction.*—Draw a radius  $OL$  of the circle.

Make  $\angle LON = 2 \angle E$ , and  $\angle LOM = \angle 2F$ .

Join  $LM$ ,  $MN$ ,  $NL$ .

$\triangle LMN$  is the required  $\triangle$ .

Join  $OM$ ,  $ON$ .

*Proof.*— $\because \angle LON$  at the centre and  $\angle LMN$  at the circumference stand on the same arc.

$$\therefore \angle LON = 2 \angle LMN, (\text{III}-6, \text{p. } 152.)$$

$$\text{But } \angle LON = 2 \angle E, \quad (\text{Const.})$$

$$\therefore \angle LMN = \angle E.$$

$$\text{Similarly } \angle LNM = \angle F.$$

$$\therefore \angle LMN = \angle E,$$

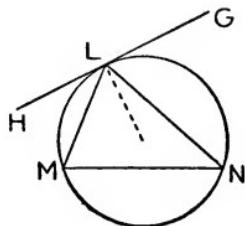
$$\text{and } \angle LNM = \angle F,$$

$$\therefore \angle MLN = \angle D. \quad (\text{I}-10, \text{p. } 45.)$$

$$\text{and } \therefore \triangle LMN \sim \triangle DEF.$$

## 109.—Exercises

1. Prove the following construction for inscribing a  $\triangle$  similar to a given  $\triangle DEF$  in the circle  $LMN$ .

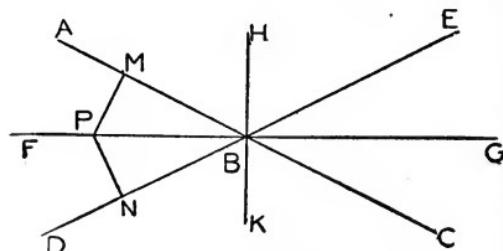


Draw a tangent  $HLG$ . Make  $\angle GLN = \angle E$ , and  $\angle HLM = \angle F$ . Join  $MN$ .

2. Inscribe an equilateral  $\triangle$  in a given circle.
3. Inscribe a square in a given circle.
4. Inscribe a regular pentagon in a given circle. (Use protractor).
5. Inscribe a regular hexagon in a given circle. (Without protractor).
6. Inscribe a regular octagon in a given circle.
7. Two  $\triangle$ s  $LMN$ ,  $DEF$ , each similar to a given  $\triangle GHK$ , are inscribed in a given circle. Prove  $\triangle LMN \equiv \triangle DEF$ .
8. In a given circle inscribe a  $\triangle$  having its sides  $\parallel$  to the sides of a given  $\triangle$ .

## PROBLEM 7

To find the locus of the centres of circles touching two given intersecting straight lines.



Let  $ABC$ ,  $DBE$  be the two st. lines.

*Construction.*—Draw the bisectors **FBG**, **HBK** of the  $\angle$ s made by **AC** and **DE**.

These bisectors make up the required locus.

*Proof.*—Take a point **P** in either **FG** or **HK**, and draw **PM**  $\perp$  **AC**, **PN**  $\perp$  **DE**.

In  $\triangle$ s **PMB**, **PNB**,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle PBM = \angle PBN, \\ \angle PMB = \angle PNB, \\ \text{and } PB \text{ is common,} \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore PM = PN. \quad (\text{I--14, p. 54.})$$

Hence, a circle described with centre **P** and radius **PM** will pass through **N**.

$\because \angle$ s at **M**, **N** are rt.  $\angle$ s,

$\therefore$  **AC**, **DE** are tangents to the circle.

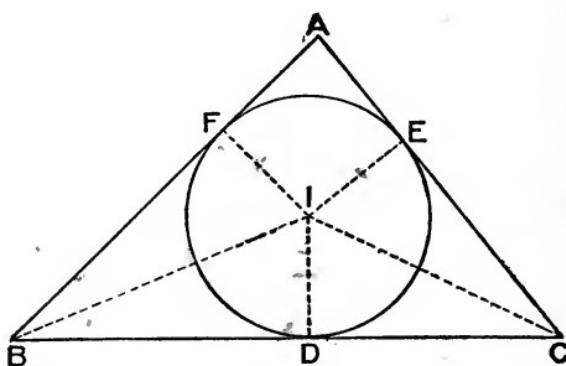
(III—14, Cor. 1, p. 171.)

**110. Definitions.**—When a circle is within a triangle, and the three sides of the triangle are tangents to the circle, the circle is said to be **inscribed in the triangle**, and is called the **inscribed circle of the triangle**.

When a circle lies without a triangle, and touches one side and the other two sides produced, the circle is called an **escribed circle of the triangle**.

## PROBLEM 8

To inscribe a circle in a given triangle.



Let  $\triangle ABC$  be the given  $\triangle$ .

Bisect  $\angle s$  **B** and **C** and produce the bisectors to meet at **I**.

Draw **ID**, **IE**, **IF**,  $\perp$  **BC**, **CA**, **AB** respectively.

In  $\triangle s$  **BID**, **BIF**,  $\begin{cases} \angle IBD = \angle IBF, \\ \angle IDB = \angle IFB, \\ IB \text{ is common,} \end{cases}$

$$\therefore ID = IF. \quad (\text{I--14, p. 54.})$$

Similarly, **ID** = **IE**.

$\therefore$  a circle described with centre **I** and radius **ID** will pass through **E** and **F**.

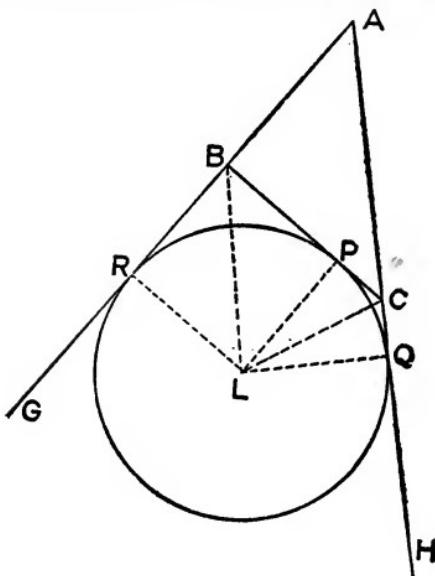
And  $\because$  the  $\angle s$  at **D**, **E** and **F** are rt.  $\angle s$ ,

$\therefore$  the circle will touch **BC**, **CA** and **AB**.

$$(\text{III--14, Cor. 1, p. 171.})$$

## PROBLEM 9

To draw an escribed circle of a given triangle.



Let **ABC** be a given  $\triangle$  having **AB**, **AC** produced to **G**, **H**.

It is required to describe a circle touching the side **BC** and the two sides **AB**, **AC** produced.

Bisect  $\angle$ s **GBC**, **HCB** and let the bisectors meet at **L**. Draw  $\perp$ s **LP**, **LQ**, **LR** to **BC**, **CH**, **BG** respectively.

In  $\triangle$ s **LBP**, **LBR**,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle PBL = \angle RBL, \\ \angle LPB = \angle LRB, \\ LB \text{ is common,} \end{array} \right.$   
 $\therefore LP = LR.$  (I—14, p. 54.)

Similarly  $LP = LQ.$

$\therefore$  a circle described with centre **L** and radius **LP** will pass through **R** and **Q**.

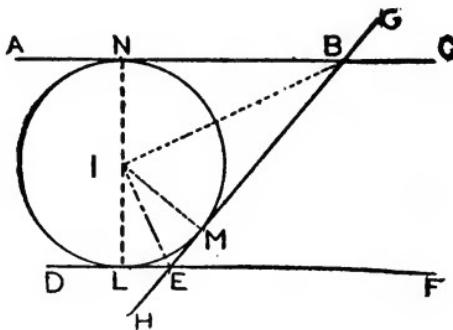
$\because$  the  $\angle$ s at **P**, **Q** and **R** are rt.  $\angle$ s,

$\therefore$  the circle will touch **BC**, and **CA** and **AB** produced. (III—14, Cor. 1, p. 171.)

## PROBLEM 10

To describe a circle to touch three given straight lines.

(a) If two of the lines are  $\parallel$  to each other, and the third cuts them, two circles may be drawn to touch the three lines.



Let **ABC**, **DEF** and **GBEH** be the three lines of which **AC**  $\parallel$  **DF**.

Bisect  $\angle$ s **ABE**, **BED**, and produce the bisectors to meet at **I**.

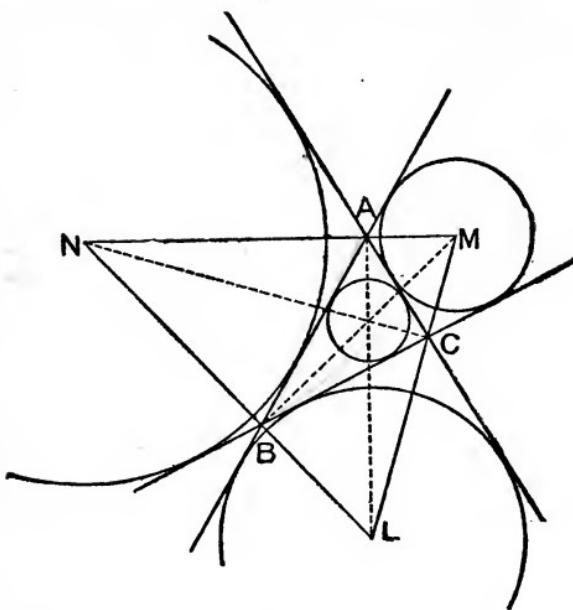
Draw **IL**, **IM**, **IN**  $\perp$  **DE**, **EB**, **BA** respectively.

As in problems 8 and 9 it may be shown that a circle described with centre **I** and radius **IL** will touch **DE**, **EB** and **BA**.

Similarly, a circle may be described on the other side of **BE** to touch the three given st. lines.

(b) If the lines intersect each other forming a  $\triangle$ , four circles may be drawn to touch the three lines.

Let  $\triangle ABC$  be the  $\triangle$  formed by the lines.



Draw the inscribed circle and the three escribed circles of  $\triangle ABC$ .

These four circles touch the three given st. lines.

### III.—Exercises

1. Make an  $\angle YXZ = 45^\circ$ . Find a point  $P$  such that its distance from  $XY$  is 3 cm., and its distance from  $XZ$  is 4 cm.
2. Make an  $\angle YXZ = 60^\circ$ . Find a point  $P$  such that its distance from  $XY$  is 4 cm., and its distance from  $XZ$  is 5 cm.
3. The bisectors of the  $\angle$ s of a  $\triangle$  are concurrent.
4. The bisectors of the exterior  $\angle$ s at two vertices of a  $\triangle$  and the bisector of the interior  $\angle$  at the third vertex are concurrent.
5. If  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  represent the numerical measures of the sides  $BC$ ,  $CA$ ,  $AB$  respectively of  $\triangle ABC$ , and  $s = \frac{1}{2}(a + b + c)$ ,

(a)  $AF = s - a$ ,  $BD = s - b$ ,  $CE = s - c$ , when  $D$ ,  $E$  and  $F$  are the points of contact of  $BC$ ,  $CA$ ,  $AB$  with the inscribed circle. (Diagram of Problem 8.)

(b)  $AR = s$ ,  $BP = s - c$ ,  $CP = s - b$ , where  $R$  and  $P$  are the points of contact of  $AB$  produced and of  $BC$  with an escribed circle. (Diagram of Problem 9.)

(c) If  $r$  be the radius of the inscribed circle,  $rs =$  the area of  $\triangle ABC$ .

(d) If  $r_1$  be the radius of the escribed circle touching  $BC$ ,  $r_1(s - a) =$  the area of  $\triangle ABC$ .

6. If the base and vertical  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  be given, find the locus of the inscribed centre.

7. If the base and vertical  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  be given, find the loci of the escribed centres.

8.  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$  are the centres of the escribed circles of  $\triangle PQR$ . Show that the sides of  $\triangle LMN$  pass through the vertices of  $\triangle PQR$ .

9. If the centres of the escribed circles be joined, and the points of contact of the inscribed circle with the sides be joined, the  $\triangle$ s thus formed are similar.

10. Construct a  $\triangle$  having given the base, the vertical  $\angle$  and the radius of the inscribed circle.

11. Describe a circle cutting off three equal chords of given length from the sides of a given  $\triangle$ .

12. An escribed circle of  $\triangle ABC$  touches  $BC$  at  $D$  and also touches  $AB$  and  $AC$  produced. The inscribed circle touches  $BC$  at  $E$ . Show that  $DE$  equals the difference of  $AB$  and  $AC$ .

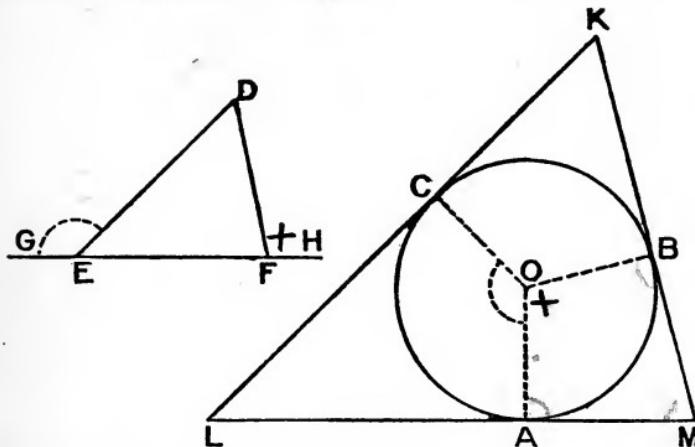
13. Circumscribe a square about a given circle.

14. Inscribe a circle in a given square.

15. Circumscribe a circle about a given square.

## PROBLEM 11

About a given circle to circumscribe a triangle similar to a given triangle.



Let **ABC** be the given circle and **DEF** the given  $\triangle$ .  
*Construction.*—Produce **EF** to **G** and **H**.

Draw any radius **OA** of the circle, and at **O** make  $\angle AOB = \angle DFE$ , and  $\angle AOC = \angle DEG$ ; and produce the arms to cut the circle at **B**, **C**.

At **A**, **B**, **C** draw tangents to the circle meeting at **K**, **L** and **M**.

**KLM** is the required  $\triangle$ .

*Proof.*— $\because$   $\angle$ s **MAO** and **MBO** in the quadrilateral **MBOA** are rt.  $\angle$ s,

$$\therefore \angle M + \angle AOB = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle \text{s.}$$

$$= \angle DFE + \angle DFH.$$

But,  $\angle AOB = \angle DFH$ ,

$$\therefore \angle M = \angle DFE.$$

Similarly,  $\angle L = \angle DEF$ .

$$\therefore \angle L + \angle M = \angle DEF + \angle DFE,$$

and  $\therefore \angle K = \angle EDF$ . (I—10, p. 45.)

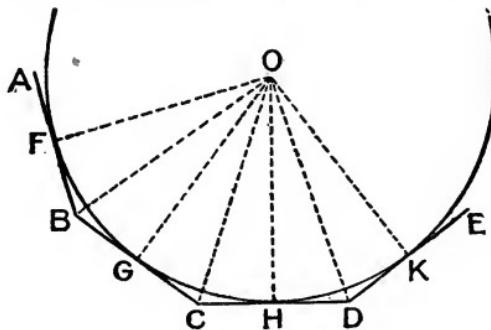
$$\therefore \triangle KLM \sim \triangle DEF.$$

## 112.—Exercises

1. About a given circle circumscribe an equilateral  $\triangle$ .
2. If two similar  $\triangle$ s be circumscribed about the same circle, the  $\triangle$ s are congruent.
3. Describe a  $\triangle LMN$  similar to a given  $\triangle$  and such that a given circle is touched by  $MN$  and by  $LM$  and  $LN$  produced.

## PROBLEM 12

To inscribe a circle in a given regular polygon.



Let  $AB, BC, CD, DE$  be four consecutive sides of a given regular polygon.

It is required to inscribe a circle in the polygon.

Bisect  $\angle s BCD, CDE$  and produce the bisectors to meet at  $O$ . Join  $OB$ . From  $O$  draw  $\perp s OF, OG, OH, OK$  to  $AB, BC, CD, DE$  respectively.

In  $\triangle s OCB, OCD$ ,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} BC = CD, \\ CO \text{ is common,} \\ \angle OCB = \angle OCD, \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \angle OBC = \angle ODC. \quad (\text{I}-2, \text{ p. } 16.)$$

But  $\angle ODC = \frac{1}{2} \angle CDE$  and  $\angle ABC = \angle CDE$ ,

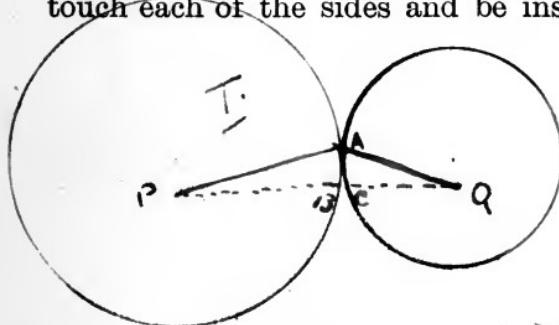
$$\therefore \angle OBC = \frac{1}{2} \angle ABC.$$

In the same manner it may be shown that if  $O$  be joined to all the vertices of the polygon the joining lines will bisect the  $\angle$ s at the vertices.

In  $\triangle OCG, OCH$ ,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle OCG = \angle OCH, \\ \angle OGC = \angle OHC, \\ OC \text{ is common,} \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore OG = OH. \quad (\text{I--14, p. 54.)}$$

In the same manner it may be shown that the  $\perp$ s from  $O$  to all of the sides are equal to each other, and as the  $\angle$ s at  $F, G, H$ , etc., are rt.  $\angle$ s, a circle described with  $O$  as centre and  $OF$  as radius will touch each of the sides and be inscribed in the polygon.



Theorem 16

i.  $P + Q$  are centres of two circles touching at  $A$   
Prove  $PQ$  passes through  $A$

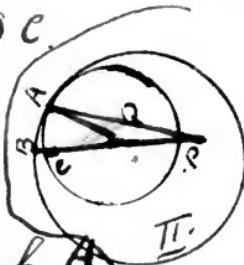
Suppose  $PQ$  does not pass through  $A$  but cuts the circles at  $B, C$ . Join  $PA, QA$ .

$$\therefore PA = PB + BA = QC.$$

$$\text{II. } \frac{PA + AQ}{PA - AQ} < \frac{PQ}{PQ}$$

which is impossible.

$\therefore PQ$  passes through  $A$ )

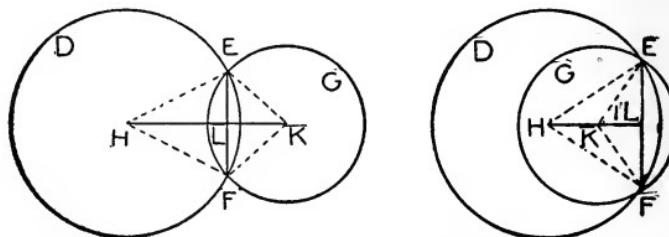


## CONTACT OF CIRCLES

113. **Definition.**—If two circles meet each other at one and only one point, they are said to **touch** each other at that point.

## THEOREM 16

If two circles touch each other, the straight line joining their centres passes through the point of contact.



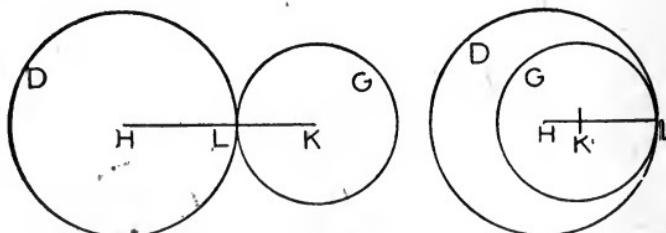
Let two circles **DEF**, **GEF**, of which the centres are **H**, **K** respectively, cut each other at **E**, **F**.

Join **HE**, **HF**, **KE**, **KF**.

$\therefore$  **HEF**, **KEF** are isosceles  $\triangle$ s on the same base **EF**,

$\therefore$  **HK** is an axis of symmetry of the quadrilateral **HEKF** and **E**, **F** are corresponding points. (I—5, p. 24.)

$\therefore$  **HK** bisects **EF**.

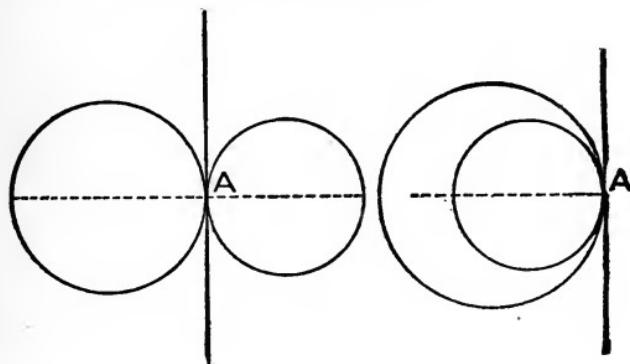


Let the circle **GEF** move so that the points **E**, **F** approach each other and finally coincide.

$\therefore L$  is the middle point of  $EF$ ,

$\therefore L$  coincides with  $E$  and  $F$ , the circles touch at  $L$ , and the st. line  $HK$  passes through the point of contact  $L$ .

**Cor. 1.**—The straight line drawn from the point of contact perpendicular to the line of centres is a common tangent to the two circles.



**Definition.**—If two circles which touch each other are on opposite sides of the common tangent at their point of contact, and consequently each circle outside the other, they are said to touch **externally**; if they are on the same side of the common tangent, and consequently one within the other, they are said to touch **internally**.

**Cor. 2.**—If two circles touch externally, the distance between their centres is equal to the sum of their radii; and conversely.

**Cor. 3.**—If two circles touch internally, the distance between their centres is equal to the difference of their radii; and conversely.

## 114.—Exercises

1. If the st. line joining the centres of two circles pass through a point common to the two circumferences, the circles touch each other at that point.
2. Find the locus of the centres of all circles which touch a given circle at a given point.
3. Draw three circles with radii 23, 32 and 43 mm. each of which touches the other two externally.
4. Draw a circle of radius 9 cm., and within it draw two circles of radii 3 cm. and 4 cm., to touch each other externally, and each of which touches the first circle internally.
5. Draw a circle of radius 85 mm., and within it draw two circles of radii 25 mm. and 35 mm., to touch each other externally, and each of which touches the first circle internally.
6. Draw a  $\triangle ABC$  with sides 5, 12 and 13 cm. Draw three circles, with centres **A**, **B** and **C** respectively, each of which touches the other two externally.
7. Construct the  $\triangle ABC$ , having  $a = 5$  cm.,  $b = 4$  cm., and  $c = 3$  cm. Draw three circles with centres **A**, **B** and **C** respectively, such that the circles with centres **B** and **C** touch externally, and each touches the circle with centre **A** internally.
8. Mark two points **P** and **Q** 10 cm. apart. With centres **P** and **Q**, and radii 4 cm. and 3 cm., describe two circles. Draw a circle of radius 5 cm. which touches each of the first two circles externally. Find the distance of the centre from **PQ**.
9. Describe a circle to pass through a given point, and touch a given circle at a given point.
10. If two circles touch each other, any st. line drawn through the point of contact will cut off segments that contain equal  $\angle$ s.

- ✓ 11. Two circles  $A\dot{C}\dot{O}$ ,  $B\dot{D}\dot{O}$  touch, and through  $O$ , st. lines  $AOB$ ,  $COD$  are drawn. Show that  $AC \parallel BD$ .
- ✓ 12. If two  $\parallel$  diameters be drawn in two circles which touch one another, the point of contact and an extremity of each diameter are in the same st. line.
13. Describe a circle which shall touch a given circle, have its centre in a given st. line, and pass through a given point in the st. line.
14. Describe three circles having their centres at three given points and touching each other in pairs. Show that there are four solutions.
15. Two circles touch a given st. line at two given points, and also touch each other; find the locus of their point of contact.
16. If through the point of contact of two touching circles a st. line be drawn cutting the circles again at two points, the radii drawn to these points are  $\parallel$ .
- 17. In a given semi-circle inscribe a circle having its radius equal to a given st. line.
- 18. Inscribe a circle in a given sector.
19. A circle of 2.5 cm. radius has its centre at a distance of 5 cm. from a given st. line. Describe four circles each of 4 cm. radius to touch both the circle and the st. line.
20. If  $DE$  be drawn  $\parallel$  to the base  $GH$  of a  $\triangle FGH$  to meet  $FG$ ,  $FH$  at  $D$ ,  $E$  respectively, the circles described about the  $\triangle$ s  $FGH$ ,  $FDE$  touch each other at  $F$ .
21. Two circles with centres  $P$ ,  $Q$  touch externally and a third circle is drawn, with centre  $R$ , which both the first circles touch internally. Prove that the perimeter of  $\triangle PQR$  = the diameter of the circle with centre  $R$ .

### Miscellaneous Exercises

1. If two chords of a circle intersect at rt.  $\angle$ s, the sum of the squares on their segments is equal to the square on the diameter.
2. Find a point in the circumference of a given circle, the sum of the squares on whose distances from two given points may be a maximum or minimum.
3. **AOB**, **COD** are chords cutting at a point **O** within the circle. Show that  $\angle BOC$  equals an  $\angle$  at the circumference, subtended by an arc which is equal to the sum of the arcs subtending  $\angle$ s **BOC**, **AOD**.
4. Two chords **AB**, **CD** intersect at a point **O** without a circle. Show that  $\angle AOC$  equals an  $\angle$  at the circumference subtended by an arc which is equal to the difference of the two arcs **BD**, **AC** intercepted between **OBA** and **ODC**.
5. Two circles touch externally at **E**, and are cut by a st. line at **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**. Show that  $\angle AED$  is supplementary to  $\angle BEC$ .
6. If at a point of intersection of two circles the tangents drawn to the circles be at rt.  $\angle$ s, the st. line joining the points where these tangents meet the circles again, passes through the other point of intersection of the circles.
7. Find a point within a given  $\triangle$  at which the three sides subtend equal  $\angle$ s. When is the solution possible?
8. Through one of the points of intersection of two given circles draw the greatest possible st. line terminated in the two circumferences.
9. Through one of the points of intersection of two given circles draw a st. line terminated in the two circumferences and equal to a given st. line.

10. Describe a circle of given radius to touch two given circles.

11. **DEF** is a st. line cutting **BC**, **CA**, **AB**, the sides of  $\triangle ABC$ , at **D**, **E**, **F** respectively. Show that the circles circumscribed about the  $\triangle$ s **AEF**, **BFD**, **CDE**, **ABC**, all pass through one point.

12. Two circles touch each other at **A** and **BAC** is drawn terminated in the circumferences at **B**, **C**. Show that the tangents at **B**, **C** are  $\parallel$ .

13. **D**, **E**, **F** are any points on the sides **BC**, **CA**, **AB** of  $\triangle ABC$ . Show that the circles circumscribed about the  $\triangle$ s **AFE**, **BDF**, **CED** pass through a common point.

14. Two arcs stand on a common chord **AB**. **P** is any point on one arc and **PA**, **PB** cut the other arc at **C**, **D**. Show that the length of **CD** is constant.

15. **ACB** is an  $\angle$  in a segment. The tangent at **A** is  $\parallel$  to the bisector of  $\angle ACB$  and meets **BC** produced at **D**. Show that **AD = AB**.

16. Describe a circle of given radius to touch two given intersecting st. lines.

17. In the  $\triangle ABC$ , the bisector of  $\angle A$  meets **BC** at **D**. **O** is the centre of a circle which touches **AB** at **A** and passes through **D**. Prove that **OD  $\perp$  AC**.

18. The st. line **BC** of given length moves so that **B** and **C** are respectively on two given fixed st. lines **AX** and **AY**. Prove that the circumcentre of  $\triangle ABC$  lies on the circumference of a circle with centre **A**.

19. **ABC** is an isosceles  $\triangle$  in which **AB = AC**. **D** is any point in **BC**. Show that the centre of the circle **ABD** is the same distance from **AB** that the centre of the circle **ACD** is from **AC**.

20. **E, F, G, H** are the points of contact of the sides of a quadrilateral **ABCD** circumscribed about a circle. Prove that the difference of two opposite  $\angle$ s of **ABCD** = twice the difference of two adjacent  $\angle$ s of **EFGH**.

21. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  in which **AX, BY** are  $\perp$  **BC, CA** respectively. Prove that the tangent at **X** to the circle **CXY** passes through the middle point of **AB**; and the tangent at **C** to the same circle  $\parallel$  **AB**.

22. The inscribed circle of  $\triangle ABC$  touches **BC** at **D**. Prove that the circles inscribed in  $\triangle$ s **BAD, CAD** touch each other.

23. **O** is the circumcentre of the  $\triangle ABC$ , and **AO, BO, CO** produced meet the circumference in **D, E, F**. Prove  $\triangle DEF \equiv \triangle ABC$ .

24. **ABC** is a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ , **A** being the rt.  $\angle$ . Prove that **BC** = the difference between the radius of the inscribed circle and the radius of the circle which touches **BC** and the other two sides produced.

25. Describe two circles to touch two given circles, the point of contact with one of these given circles being given.

26. Circles through two fixed points **A** and **B** intersect fixed st. lines, which terminate at **A** and are equally inclined to **AB** on opposite sides of it, in the points **L, M**. Prove that **AL + AM** is constant.

27. **AB** is a diameter and **CD** a chord of a given circle. **AX** and **BY** are both  $\perp$  **CD**. Prove that **CX = DY**.

28. Through a fixed point **A** on a circle any chord **AB** is drawn and produced to **C** making **BC = AB**. Find the locus of **C**.

29. Construct a  $\triangle$  having given the base, the vertical  $\angle$ , and the length of the median drawn from one end of the base.

30. If the sum of one pair of opposite sides of a quadrilateral is equal to the sum of the other pair, a circle may be inscribed in the quadrilateral.

31. Construct a  $\triangle$  having given the vertical  $\angle$ , the base, and the point where the bisector of the vertical  $\angle$  cuts the base.

32. From the ends of a diameter  $BC$  of a circle,  $\parallel$  chords  $BE, CF$  are drawn, meeting the circle again in  $E$  and  $F$ . Prove that  $EF$  is a diameter.

33.  $ACFB$  and  $ADEB$  are fixed circles;  $CAD, CBE$  and  $DBF$  are st. lines. Prove that  $CF$  and  $DE$  meet at a constant  $\angle$ .

34.  $A, B, C, D$  are four points in order on the circumference of a circle, and the arc  $AB =$  the arc  $CD$ . If  $AC$  and  $BD$  cut at  $E$ , the chord which bisects  $\angle$ s  $AEB, CED$  is itself bisected at  $E$ .

35.  $AB, AC$  are tangents at  $B, C$  to a circle, and  $D$  is the middle point of the minor arc  $BC$ . Prove that  $D$  is the centre of the inscribed circle of the  $\triangle ABC$ .

36. Construct an equilateral  $\triangle$  whose side is of given length so that its vertices may be on the sides of a given equilateral  $\triangle$ .

37.  $D, E, F$  are the points of contact of the sides  $BC, CA, AB$  of a  $\triangle ABC$  with its inscribed circle.  $FK$  is  $\perp DE$ , and  $EH$  is  $\perp FD$ . Prove  $HK \parallel BC$ .

38. Tangents are drawn from a given point to a system of concentric circles. Find the locus of their points of contact.

39. From a given point **A** without a given circle draw a secant **ABC** such that  $AB = BC$ .

40. **EF** is a fixed chord of a given circle, **P** any point on its circumference.  $EM \perp FP$  and  $FN \perp EP$ . Find the locus of the middle point of **MN**.

41. **K** is the middle point of a chord **PQ** in a circle of which **O** is the centre. **LKM** is a chord. Tangents at **L**, **M** meet **PQ** produced at **G**, **H** respectively. Prove  $\triangle OGL \equiv \triangle OHM$ .

42. **LM** is the diameter of the semi-circle **LNM** in which  $\text{arc } LN > \text{arc } NM$ , and  $ND \perp LM$ . A circle inscribed in the figure bounded by **ND**, **DM** and the arc **NM** touches **DM** at **E**. Show that  $LE = LN$ ; and hence give a construction for inscribing the circle.

43. **GK** is a diameter and **O** the centre of a circle. A tangent  $KD = KO$ . From **O** a  $\perp$  **OE** is drawn to **GD**. **KE** is joined and produced to meet the circumference in **F**. Prove that  $FE = FG$ .

44. **LPM** and **LQRM** are two given segments on the same chord **LM**. If **P** moves on the arc **LPM** such that **LQP** and **MRP** are st. lines, the length of **QR** is constant.

45. **EFP**, **FRS** are two circles and **PFR**, **PES** are st. lines. **O** is the centre of the circle **EFP**. Prove that  $PO \perp RS$ .

46. **E**, **F** are fixed points on the circles **EPD**, **FQD**, and **PDQ** is a variable st. line. **PE**, **QF** intersect at **R**. Find the locus of **R**.

47. The circle **PEGF** passes through the centre **G** of the circle **QEF**, and **P**, **E**, **Q** are in a st. line. Prove that  $PQ = PF$ .

48. Through two points on a diameter equally distant from the centre of a circle,  $\parallel$  chords are drawn, show that

these chords are the opposite sides of a rectangle inscribed in the circle.

49. If through the points of intersection of two circles any two  $\parallel$  st. lines be drawn and the ends joined towards the same parts, the figure so formed is a  $\parallel$ gm.

50. Any two  $\parallel$  tangents are drawn, one to each of two given circles; a st. line is drawn through the points of contact, show that the tangents to the circles at the other points of intersection are also  $\parallel$ .

51. The hypotenuse of a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  is fixed and the other two sides are moveable, find the locus of the point of intersection of the bisectors of the acute  $\angle$ s of the  $\triangle$ .

52. From the middle point  $L$  of the arc  $MLN$  of a circle two chords are drawn cutting the chord  $MN$  and the circumference. Show that the four points of intersection are concyclic.

53. If from one end of a diameter of a circle, two st. lines be drawn to the tangent at the other end of the diameter, the four points of intersection—with the circle, and with the tangent—are concyclic.

54. **A****B****C** is a diameter of a circle, **B** being the centre. **A****D** is a chord, and **B****E**  $\perp$  to **A****C** cutting the chord at **E**. Show that **B****C****D****E** is a cyclic quadrilateral; and that the circles described about **A****B****E** and the quadrilateral **B****C****D****E**, are equal.

55. Two circles intersect at **A** and **B**. From **A** two chords **A****C** and **A****E** are drawn one in each circle making equal  $\angle$ s with **A****B**, st. lines **C****B****D** and **E****B****F** are drawn to cut the circles at **D** and **F**, prove **C**, **F**, **D**, **E** concyclic; also prove  $\triangle$ s **F****C****A** and **D****E****A** similar.

56. **A****B****C** is a  $\triangle$  and any circle is drawn passing through **B**, and cutting **B****C** at **D** and **A****B** at **F**; another circle is

drawn passing through **C** and **D** and intersecting the former circle at **E** and **AC** at **G**. Prove **A, F, E, G** are concyclic.

57. If two equal circles intersect, the four tangents at the points of intersection form a rhombus.

58. If two equal circles cut, and at **G**, one of the points of intersection, chords be drawn in each circle, to touch the other circle, these chords are equal.

59. Two equal circles, centres **O** and **P**, touch externally at **S**, **SQ** and **SR** are drawn  $\perp$  to each other cutting the circumferences at **Q** and **R** respectively. Show that **O, P, Q** and **R** are the vertices of a  $\parallel$ gm.

60. **AB, CD**, and **EF** are  $\parallel$  chords in a circle, prove that the  $\triangle$ s **ACE** and **BDF** are congruent; also **ACF** and **BDE**; also **ADF** and **BCE**.

61. On the circumference of a circle are two fixed points which are joined to a moveable point either inside or outside the circle. If these lines intercept a constant arc, find the locus of the point.

62. **KL** is any chord of a circle and **H** the middle point of one of the arcs, any st. line **HED** cuts **KL** at **E** and the circumference at **D**. Show that **HL** is a tangent to the circle about **LED**, and **HK** a tangent to that about **KED**.

63. Two circles intersect at **E** and **F**. From any point **P** on the circumference of one of them st. lines **PE** and **PF** are drawn to meet the circumference of the other at **Q** and **R**, show that the length of the straight line **QR** is constant. [Take **P** both on the major arc and on the minor arc.]

64. **HKL** is a  $\triangle$  having  $\angle H$  acute; on **KL** as diameter a circle, centre **O**, is described cutting **HK** at **D** and **HL** at **E**. Show that  $\angle ODE = \angle H$ .

65. **P** is a point external to two concentric circles whose centre is **O**, **PQ** is a tangent to the outer circle and **PR** and **PS** are tangents to the inner circle. Show that  $\angle RQS$  is bisected by **QO**.

66. If the extremities of two  $\parallel$  diameters in two circles be joined by a st. line which cuts the circles, the tangents at the points of intersection are  $\parallel$ . Show that this is true for the four cases that arise.

67. **KLMN** is a  $\parallel$ gm, through **L** and **N** two  $\parallel$  st. lines are drawn cutting **MN** at **F** and **KL** at **E**, show that the circles described about the  $\triangle$ s **KNE** and **LMF** are equal.

68. **EFGH** is a quadrilateral having **EF**  $\parallel$  **HG** and **EH = FG**. From **E** a st. line **EK** is drawn  $\parallel$  **FG** meeting **HG** at **K**. Show that circles described about the  $\triangle$ s **EHG**, **EKG** are equal.

69. From any point **P** on the circumference of a circle **PD**, **PE** and **PF** are perpendiculars to a chord **QR**, and to the tangents **QT** and **RT**. Show that the  $\triangle$ s **PED** and **PFD** are similar.

70. A quadrilateral having two  $\parallel$  sides is described about a circle. Show that the st. line drawn through the centre  $\parallel$  to the  $\parallel$  sides and terminated by the nonparallel sides is one quarter of the perimeter of the quadrilateral.

71. **CD** is a diameter of a circle centre **O**; chords **CF** and **DG** intersect within the circle at **E**. Show that **OF** is a tangent to the circle passing through **F**, **G** and **E**.

72. **EF** is a chord of a circle and **EP** a tangent; a st. line **PG**  $\parallel$  to **EF** meets the circle at **G**; prove that the  $\triangle$ s **EFG** and **EPG** are similar.

73. The diagonals of a quadrilateral are  $\perp$ ; show that the st. lines joining the feet of the perpendiculars from

the intersection of the diagonals on the sides form a cyclic quadrilateral.

74. Two chords of a circle intersect at rt.  $\angle$ s and tangents are drawn to the circle from the extremities of the chords; show that the resulting quadrilateral is cyclic.

75. A quadrilateral is described about a circle and its vertices are joined to the centre cutting the circumference in four points. Show that the diagonals of the quadrilateral formed by joining these four points are  $\perp$ .

76. **D****E****F** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle whose centre is **O**. On **E****F** any arc of a circle is described and **E****D**, **F****D**, or these lines produced, meet the arc at **P**, **Q**. Show that **O****D**, or **O****D** produced, cuts **P****Q** at rt.  $\angle$ s.

77. **P****Q****R****S** is a ||gm and the diagonals intersect at **E**. Show that the circles described about **P****E****S** and **Q****E****R** touch each other; and likewise those about **P****E****Q** and **R****E****S**.

78. Two equal circles intersect at **E** and **F**; with centre **E** and radius **E****F** a circle is described cutting the circles at **G** and **H**. Show that **F****G** and **F****H** are tangents to the equal circles.

79. If from any point on the circumference of a circle perpendiculars be drawn to two fixed diameters, the line joining their feet is of constant length.

80. From the extremities of the diameter of a circle perpendiculars are drawn to any chord. Show that the centre is equally distant from the feet of the perpendiculars.

81. **E****F** and **G****H** are || chords in a circle, **F** and **H** being towards the same parts; a point **K** is taken on the circumference such that **G****F** bisects  $\angle$  **H****G****K**. Prove **G****K** = **E****F**.

82. Two circles intersect at **D** and **E**, and **K****E****L** and **P****E****Q** are two chords terminated by the circumferences. Show that the  $\triangle$ s **D****K****P** and **D****L****Q** are similar.

83. If from two points outside a circle, equally distant from the centre and situated on a diameter produced, tangents be drawn to the circle, the resulting quadrilateral is a rhombus.

84. If the arcs cut off by the sides of a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle be bisected and the opposite points be joined, these two lines shall be  $\perp$ . (*Note.—Use Ex. 3.*)

85. **PQ** is a fixed st. line and **PM**, **QN** are any two  $\parallel$  st. lines, **M** and **N** being towards the same parts. The  $\angle$ s **MPQ** and **NQP** are bisected by **PR** and **QR**. Find the locus of **R**.

86. If the  $\angle$ s of a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle be bisected by lines which meet the circumference, and a new  $\triangle$  be formed by joining these points on the circumference, its sides shall be  $\perp$  to the bisectors.

87. If two circles touch each other internally, and a st. line be drawn  $\parallel$  to the tangent at the point of contact, the two intercepts between the circumferences subtend equal  $\angle$ s at the point of contact.

88. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle and **BA** is produced to **E**; **D** is any point in **AE**; circles are described through **B, C, D** and through **B, C, E**; **CFDG** cuts the circles **ABC, EBC** in **F** and **G**. Prove that  $\triangle$ s **ADF** and **DEG** are similar.

89. Draw a tangent to a circle which shall bisect a given  $\parallel$ gm which is outside the circle.

90. In a given circle draw a chord of fixed length which shall be bisected by a given chord.

91. In a given circle draw a chord which shall pass through a given point and be bisected by a given chord. How many such chords can be drawn?

92. Describe a circle with given radius to touch a given st. line and have its centre in another given st. line.
93. Describe a circle of given radius to pass through a given point and touch a given st. line.
94. Describe a circle to touch a given circle at a given point and a given st. line.
95. In a given st. line find a point such that the st. lines joining it to two given points may be (a)  $\perp$ s, (b) make a given  $\angle$  with each other.
96. Describe a circle of given radius to touch a given circle and a given st. line.
97. Describe a circle to touch a given circle and a given st. line at a given point.
98. Inscribe in a given circle a  $\triangle$  one of whose sides shall be equal to a given st. line, and such that the other two may pass through two given points respectively.
99. Place a chord  $PQ$  in a circle so that it will pass through a given point  $O$  within the circle, and such that the difference between  $OP$  and  $OQ$  may be equal to a given st. line.
100. Find two points on the circumference of a given circle which shall be concyclic with two given points  $P$  and  $Q$  outside the circle.
101. Describe a square ( $EFGH$ ) having given the point  $F$  and two points  $P$  and  $Q$  in the sides  $FE$  and  $EH$  respectively.
102. Describe a square ( $EFGH$ ) having given the point  $G$  and two points  $P$  and  $Q$  in the sides  $FE$  and  $EH$  respectively.
103. Describe a square so that its sides shall pass respectively through four given points.

104. If three circles touch externally at  $P$ ,  $Q$ ,  $R$  and  $PQ$  and  $PR$  meet the circumference of  $QR$  at  $D$  and  $E$ , then  $DE$  is a diameter, and is  $\parallel$  to the line joining the centres of the other two circles.

105. Two equal circles intersect so that the tangents at one of the points of intersection are  $\perp$ s. Show that the square on the diameter is twice the square on the common chord.

106.  $LMN$  is a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$ ,  $L$  being the rt.  $\angle$ , and  $LD$  is  $\perp$  to  $MN$ . Show that  $LM$  is a tangent to the circle  $LDN$ .

107.  $PQ$  is a tangent to a circle and  $PRS$  a secant passing through the centre,  $QN$  is  $\perp$  to  $PS$ . Show that  $QR$  bisects  $\angle PQN$ .

108.  $LMN$  is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle whose centre is  $O$ . Show that the radius  $OL$  makes the same  $\angle$  with  $LM$  that the  $\perp$  from  $L$  to  $MN$  makes with  $LN$ .

109. If two chords of a circle be  $\perp$ , the sum of one pair of opposite intercepted arcs is equal to the sum of the other pair.

110. On the sides of a quadrilateral as diameters circles are described. Show that the common chords of every adjacent pair of circles is  $\parallel$  to the common chord of the remaining pair.

111. Two equal circles are so situated that the distance between their nearest points is less than the diameter of either circle. Show how to draw a st. line cutting them so as to be trisected by the circumferences.

112.  $LMN$  is a  $\triangle$  and  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$  are the middle points of  $MN$ ,  $NL$  and  $LM$  respectively; if  $LP$  is the perpendicular on  $MN$ , show that  $D$ ,  $P$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$  are concyclic.

113.  $QR$  is a fixed chord of a circle and  $P$  a moveable point on the circumference. Find the locus of the intersection of the diagonals of the  $\parallel$ gm having  $PQ$  and  $QR$  for adjacent sides.

114. If a quadrilateral having two  $\parallel$  sides is inscribed in a circle, show that the four perpendiculars from the middle point of an arc cut off by one of the  $\parallel$  sides, to the two diagonals and to the nonparallel sides, are equal.

115.  $ABCD$  and  $A'B'C'D'$  are any rectangles inscribed in two concentric circles respectively.  $P$  is on the circumference of the former circle and  $P'$  on the latter. Prove  $PA'^2 + PB'^2 + PC'^2 + PD'^2 = P'A^2 + P'B^2 + P'C^2 + P'D^2$ .

116. A point  $Y$  is taken in a radius of a circle whose centre is  $O$ ; on  $OY$  as base an isosceles  $\triangle XOY$  is described having  $X$  on the circumference;  $XO$  and  $XY$  are produced to meet the circumference at  $D$  and  $Z$  respectively, and  $E$  is the point between  $D$  and  $Z$  where the perpendicular from  $O$  to  $OY$  cuts the circle. Show that the arc  $DE$  is one-third of arc  $EZ$ .

---

## BOOK IV

### RATIO AND PROPORTION

**115. Definitions.**—The **ratio** of one magnitude to another *of the same kind* is the number of times that the first contains the second; or it is the part, or fraction, that the first magnitude is of the second.

Thus the ratio of one magnitude to another is the same as the measure of the first when the second is taken as the unit.

If a st. line is 5 cm. in length, the ratio of its length to the length of one centimetre is 5, that is, the st. line is to one centimetre as 5 is to 1.

If two st. lines **A**, **B** are respectively 8 inches and 3 inches in length, then the ratio of **A** to **B** is 8 to 3.

The ratio of one magnitude **A** to another **B** is written either  $\frac{A}{B}$  or **A** : **B**.

When the form  $\frac{A}{B}$  is used, the upper magnitude is called the **numerator**, and the lower the **denominator**; and when the form **A** : **B** is used, the first magnitude is called the **antecedent**, and the second the **consequent**. The two magnitudes are called the **terms** of the ratio.

**116. Definitions.**—**Proportion** is the equality of ratios, *i.e.*, when two ratios are equal to each other, the four magnitudes are said to be in proportion.

The equality of the ratios of **K** to **L** and of **M** to **N** may be written in any one of the three forms:—

$\frac{K}{L} = \frac{M}{N}$ , **K** : **L** = **M** : **N** or **K** : **L** :: **M** : **N**; and is read

"**K** is to **L** as **M** is to **N**."

The four magnitudes in a proportion are called **proportionals**.

The first and last are called the **extremes**, and the second and third are called the **means**.

The first two magnitudes of a proportion must be of the same kind, and the last two must be of the same kind; but the first two need not be of the same kind as the last two. Thus in the proportion  $\frac{D}{E} = \frac{F}{H}$ , **D** and **E** may be lengths of lines, while **F** and **H** are areas.

**117. Definitions.**—Three magnitudes are said to be in **continued proportion**, or in **geometric progression**, when the ratio of the first to the second equals the ratio of the second to the third.

Three magnitudes **L**, **M**, **N**, of the same kind, are in continued proportion, if  $\frac{L}{M} = \frac{M}{N}$ .

$$\text{e.g.: } L = 4 \text{ cm., } M = 6 \text{ cm., } N = 9 \text{ cm.}$$

The second magnitude of a continued proportion is called the **mean proportional**, or **geometric mean**, of the other two.

**118.** Two magnitudes of the same kind are **commensurable** when each contains some common measure an integral number of times.

Two magnitudes of the same kind are **incommensurable** when there is no common measure, however small, contained in each of them an integral number of times.

The diagonal and side of a square are incommensurable; the ratio of the diagonal to the side being  $\sqrt{2} : 1$ .

The side of an equilateral triangle and the perpendicular from a vertex to the opposite side are incommensurable; the ratio of a side to the perpendicular being  $2 : \sqrt{3}$ .

$\sqrt{2} = 1.414$  nearly, and  $\sqrt{3} = 1.732$  nearly, but while these roots may be calculated to any required degree of accuracy they cannot be exactly found. Thus there is no straight line however short that is contained an integral number of times in both the diagonal and side of a square; or in both the side and altitude of an equilateral triangle.

The treatment of incommensurable magnitudes is too difficult for an elementary text-book, but as in algebra, the relations that are obtained in geometry for commensurable magnitudes hold good also for incommensurable magnitudes.

119. The following simple algebraic theorems are used in geometry:—

1. If  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ ,  $ad = bc$ .

If four numbers be in proportion, the product of the extremes is equal to the product of the means.

2. If  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ ,  $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$

If four numbers be in proportion, the first is to the third as the second is to the fourth.

When a proportion is changed in this way the second proportion is said to be formed from the first by **alternation**.

In order that a given proportion may be changed by alternation, the four magnitudes must be of the same kind.

e.g.:—  $\frac{2 \text{ ft.}}{5 \text{ ft.}} = \frac{4 \text{ ft.}}{10 \text{ ft.}}$  and, by alternation,  $\frac{2 \text{ ft.}}{4 \text{ ft.}} = \frac{5 \text{ ft.}}{10 \text{ ft.}}$ ; but from the proportion  $\frac{\text{st. line D}}{\text{st. line E}} = \frac{\text{area F}}{\text{area G}}$  another proportion cannot be inferred by alternation.

$$3. \text{ If } \frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}, \quad \frac{b}{a} = \frac{d}{c}.$$

If four numbers be in proportion, the second is to the first as the fourth is to the third.

When a proportion is changed in this way the second proportion is said to be formed from the first by **inversion**.

$$4. \text{ If } \frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}, \quad \frac{a+b}{b} = \frac{c+d}{d}.$$

If four numbers be in proportion, the sum of the first and second is to the second as the sum of the third and fourth is to the fourth.

$$5. \text{ If } \frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}, \quad \frac{a-b}{b} = \frac{c-d}{d}.$$

If four numbers be in proportion, the difference of the first and second is to the second as the difference of the third and fourth is to the fourth.

$$6. \text{ If } \frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}, \quad \frac{a+b}{a-b} = \frac{c+d}{c-d}.$$

If four numbers be in proportion, the sum of the first and second terms is to the difference of the first and second terms as the sum of the third and fourth terms is to the difference of the third and fourth terms.

7. If  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d} = \frac{e}{f} = \text{etc.}$ , then each of the equal fractions  $= \frac{a+c+e+\text{etc.}}{b+d+f+\text{etc.}}$

If any number of ratios, the terms of which are all magnitudes of the same kind, be equal to each other, the sum of the numerators divided by the sum of the denominators equals each of the given ratios.

8. If  $ad = bc$ ,  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ , and  $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$

If the product of two numbers be equal to the product of two other numbers, one factor of the first product is to a factor of the second product as the remaining factor of the second is to the remaining factor of the first.

120. If a given straight line **MN** be divided internally at a point **P**, the internal segments **PM**, **PN** are the distances from **P** to the ends of the given straight line.

Similarly, if a point **P** be taken in a given straight line **MN** produced, the distances from **P** to the ends of the given straight line, **PM**, **PN**, are called the external segments of the straight

line, or the given straight line is said to be divided externally at the point  $P$ .



121. There is only one point where a straight line  $MN$  is divided internally into segments  $MP$ ,  $PN$  that have a given ratio  $\frac{a}{b}$ .

For, if possible, let it be divided internally at  $P$  and  $Q$  such that  $\frac{MP}{PN}$  and  $\frac{MQ}{QN}$  each equals  $\frac{a}{b}$ .

Then

$$\frac{MP}{PN} = \frac{MQ}{QN}$$

$$\therefore \frac{MP + PN}{PN} = \frac{MQ + QN}{QN}. \quad (4, \S\ 119.)$$

i.e.,

$$\frac{MN}{PN} = \frac{MN}{QN}.$$

$$\therefore PN = QN.$$

and  $\therefore Q$  coincides with  $P$ .

Similarly, there is only one point where a straight line  $MN$  is divided externally into segments  $MP$ ,  $PN$  that have a given ratio  $\frac{a}{b}$ .



For, if possible, let it be divided externally at  $P$  and  $Q$  such that  $\frac{MP}{PN}$  and  $\frac{MQ}{QN}$  each equals  $\frac{a}{b}$ .

Then

$$\frac{MP}{PN} = \frac{MQ}{QN}$$

$$\therefore \frac{MP - PN}{PN} = \frac{MQ - QN}{QN}. \quad (5, \S\ 119.)$$

i.e.,

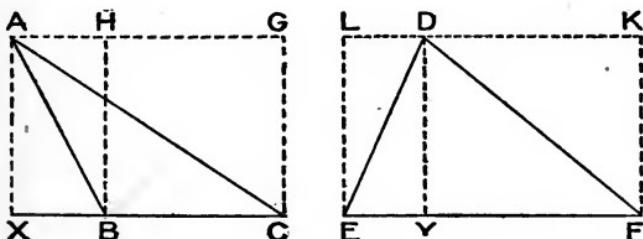
$$\frac{MN}{PN} = \frac{MN}{QN}.$$

$$\therefore PN = QN.$$

and  $\therefore Q$  coincides with  $P$ .

## THEOREM 1

Triangles of the same altitude are to each other as their bases.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle s$  ABC, DEF;  $AX \perp BC$ ,  $DY \perp EF$  and  $AX = DY$ .

*To prove that*  $\frac{\triangle ABC}{\triangle DEF} = \frac{BC}{EF}$ .

*Construction.*—On BC and EF construct the rectangles HC and LF, having  $HB = AX$  and  $LE = DY$ .

*Proof.*—Let BC and EF contain  $a$  and  $b$  units of length respectively, and AX or DY contain  $c$  units.

$$\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} HB \cdot BC = \frac{1}{2} ca. \quad (\text{II--4, p. 100.})$$

$$\triangle DEF = \frac{1}{2} LE \cdot EF = \frac{1}{2} cb.$$

$$\therefore \frac{\triangle ABC}{\triangle DEF} = \frac{\frac{1}{2} ca}{\frac{1}{2} cb} = \frac{a}{b} = \frac{BC}{EF}.$$

## 122.—Exercises

1.  $\triangle s$  on equal bases are to each other as their altitudes.
2. If two  $\triangle s$  are to each other as their bases, their altitudes must be equal.
3. ||gms of equal altitudes are to each other as their bases.
4. Construct a  $\triangle$  equal to  $\frac{5}{4}$  of a given  $\triangle$ .
5. Construct a ||gm equal to  $\frac{5}{2}$  of a given ||gm.

6. **ABC, DEF** are two  $\triangle$ s having  $AB = DE$  and  $\angle B = \angle E$ . Show that  $\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF = BC : EF$ .

7. The rectangle contained by two st. lines is a mean proportional between the squares on the lines.

8. If two equal  $\triangle$ s be on opposite sides of the same base, the st. line joining their vertices is bisected by the common base, or the base produced.

9. The sum of the  $\perp$ s from any point in the base of an isosceles  $\triangle$  to the two equal sides equals the  $\perp$  from either end of the base to the opposite side.

10. The difference of the  $\perp$ s from any point in the base produced of an isosceles  $\triangle$  to the equal sides equals the  $\perp$  from either end of the base to the opposite side.

11. The sum of the  $\perp$ s from any point within an equilateral  $\triangle$  to the three sides equals the  $\perp$  from any vertex to the opposite side.

12. If st. lines  $AO, BO, CO$  are drawn from the vertices of a  $\triangle ABC$  to any point  $O$  and  $AO$ , produced if necessary, cuts  $BC$  at  $D$ ,

$$\frac{\triangle AOB}{\triangle AOC} = \frac{BD}{DC}.$$

13. In any  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $F$  is the middle point of  $AB$ ,  $E$  is the middle point of  $AC$ , and  $BE, CF$  intersect at  $O$ . Show that  $AO$  produced bisects  $BC$ ; that is, the medians of a  $\triangle$  are concurrent.

14. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  and  $O$  is any point.  $AO, BO, CO$ , produced if necessary cut  $BC, CA, AB$  at  $D, E, F$  respectively,  $a_1, a_2, b_1, b_2, c_1, c_2$ , are respectively the numerical measures of  $BD, DC, CE, EA, AF, FB$ . Show that  $a_1 b_1 c_1 = a_2 b_2 c_2$ . (This is known as Ceva's Theorem.)

15. The four  $\triangle$ s into which a quadrilateral is divided by its diagonals are proportional.

16.  $\triangle DEF$  is a  $\triangle$ ;  $G$  is a point in  $DE$  such that  $DG = 3 GE$ , and  $H$  is a point in  $DF$  such that  $FH = 3 HD$ . Show that  $\triangle FGH = 9 \triangle EGH$ .

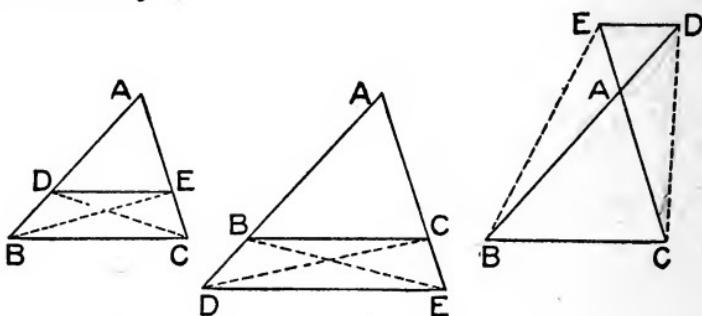
17. St. lines  $DG$ ,  $EH$ ,  $FK$  drawn from the vertices of  $\triangle DEF$  to meet the opposite sides at  $G$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$  pass through a common point  $O$ . Prove that  $\frac{DO}{DG} + \frac{EO}{EH} + \frac{FO}{FK} = 2$ .

18. In  $\triangle DEF$ ,  $G$  is taken in side  $EF$  such that  $EG = 2 GF$ , and  $H$  is taken in side  $FD$  such that  $FH = 2 HD$ .  $DG$  and  $EH$  intersect at  $O$ . Prove that  $\frac{\triangle DOH}{\triangle DEF} = \frac{1}{21}$ .

*Imp.*

## THEOREM 2

A straight line drawn parallel to the base of a triangle cuts the sides, or the sides produced, proportionally.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $DE \parallel BC$ .

*To prove that*  $\frac{BD}{DA} = \frac{CE}{EA}$ .

*Construction.*—Join  $BE$  and  $DC$ .

*Proof.*—  $\because DE \parallel BC$ ,

$$\therefore \triangle BDE = \triangle CDE \quad (\text{II--5, p. 101.})$$

$$\therefore \frac{\triangle BDE}{\triangle ADE} = \frac{\triangle CDE}{\triangle ADE}.$$

$\because$   $\triangle$ s  $BDE$ ,  $ADE$  have the same altitude, viz., the  $\perp$  from  $E$  to  $AB$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{\triangle BDE}{\triangle ADE} = \frac{BD}{DA}. \quad (\text{IV--1, p. 219.})$$

In the same way,

$$\frac{\triangle CDE}{\triangle ADE} = \frac{CE}{EA}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DA} = \frac{CE}{EA}.$$

*N.B.—By placing D on AB and E on AC in all three figures the proof applies to all.*

Cor.—In the first figure,

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DA} = \frac{CE}{EA}, \quad \therefore \frac{BD + DA}{DA} = \frac{CE + EA}{EA}. \quad \text{by addition.}$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{AD} = \frac{AC}{AE}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC} \quad \text{by inverting.}$$

Again,

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DA} = \frac{CE}{EA}, \quad \therefore \frac{DA}{BD} = \frac{EA}{CE}. \quad \text{by inverting.}$$

$$\therefore \frac{DA + BD}{BD} = \frac{EA + CE}{CE}. \quad \text{by addition.}$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{BD} = \frac{AC}{CE}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{AB} = \frac{CE}{AC}. \quad \text{by inverting.}$$

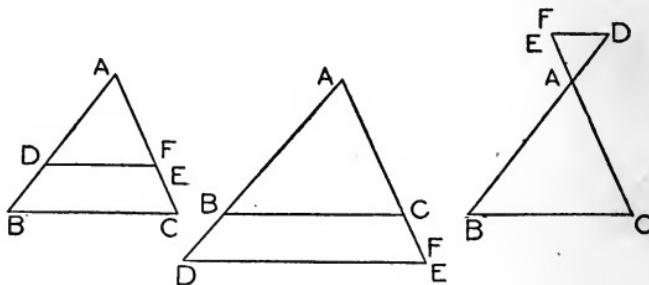
Similar proofs may be given for the second and third figures.

Thus we see that where a line is parallel to the base of a triangle we may form a proportion by taking the whole side or either of the segments, in any order, for the terms of the first ratio, provided we take the corresponding parts of the other side to form the terms of the other ratio in the proportion.

## THEOREM 3

(Converse of Theorem 2)

If two sides of a triangle, or two sides produced, be divided proportionally, the straight line joining the points of section is parallel to the base.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\frac{BD}{DA} = \frac{CE}{EA}$ .

*To prove that*  $DE \parallel BC$ .

*Construction.*—Draw  $DF \parallel BC$ , to cut  $AC$  at  $F$ .

*Proof.*—

$$\therefore DF \parallel BC,$$

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DA} = \frac{CF}{FA}. \quad (\text{IV--2, p. 222.})$$

$$\text{But } \frac{BD}{DA} = \frac{CE}{EA}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{CE}{EA} = \frac{CF}{FA},$$

And  $\therefore E$  coincides with  $F$ .

$$\therefore DE \parallel BC.$$

## 123.—Exercises

1. The st. line drawn through the middle point of one side of a  $\triangle$ , and  $\parallel$  to a second side bisects the third side.
2. The st. line joining the middle points of two sides of a  $\triangle$  is  $\parallel$  to the third side.
3. If two sides of a quadrilateral be  $\parallel$ , any st. line drawn  $\parallel$  to the  $\parallel$  sides and cutting the other sides, will cut these other sides proportionally.

4. **ABCD** is a quadrilateral having  $AB \parallel DC$ . **P, Q** are points in  $AD, BC$  respectively such that  $AP : PD = BQ : QC$ . Show that  $PQ \parallel AB$  or  $DC$ .

5. If two st. lines are cut by a series of  $\parallel$  st. lines, the intercepts on one are proportional to the corresponding intercepts on the other.

6. **D, E** are points in  $AB, AC$ , the sides of  $\triangle ABC$ , such that  $DE \parallel BC$ ;  $BE, CD$  meet at **F**. Show that  $\triangle ADF = \triangle AEF$ .

Show also that **AF** bisects **DE** and **BC**.

7. Through **D**, any point in the side **BC** of  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $DE, DF$  are drawn  $\parallel AB, AC$  respectively and meeting  $AC, AB$  at **E, F**. Show that  $\triangle AEF$  is a mean proportional between  $\triangle s FBD, EDC$ .

8. **ACB, ADB** are two  $\triangle s$  on the same base **AB**. **E** is any point in **AB**. **EF** is  $\parallel AC$  and meets **BC** at **F**. **EG** is  $\parallel AD$  and meets **BD** at **G**. Prove  $FG \parallel CD$ .

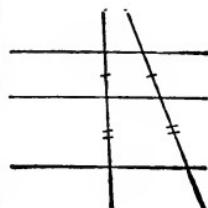
9. **D** is a point in the side **AB** of  $\triangle ABC$ ;  $DE$  is drawn  $\parallel BC$  and meets **AC** at **E**;  $EF$  is drawn  $\parallel AB$  and meets **BC** at **F**. Show that  $AD : DB = BF : FC$ .

10. From a given point **M** in the side **DE** of  $\triangle DEF$ , draw a st. line to meet **DF** produced at **N** so that **MN** is bisected by **EF**.

11. **PQRS** is a  $\parallel gm$ , and from the diagonal **PR** equal lengths **PK, RL** are cut off. **SK, SL** when produced meet **PQ, RQ** respectively at **E, F**. Prove  $EF \parallel PR$ .

12. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$  in which **K, M** are points in the side **DE** and **L, N** are points in the side **DF** such that **KL** and **MN** are both  $\parallel EF$ . Find the locus of the intersection of **KN** and **LM**.

13. **O** any point within a quadrilateral **PQRS** is joined to the four vertices and in **OP** any point **X** is taken. **XY**



is drawn  $\parallel PQ$  to meet  $OQ$  at  $Y$ ;  $YZ$  is drawn  $\parallel QR$  to meet  $OR$  at  $Z$ ; and  $ZV$  is drawn  $\parallel RS$  to meet  $OS$  at  $V$ . Prove that  $XV \parallel PS$ .

14.  $O$  is a fixed point and  $P$  moves along a fixed st. line.  $Q$  is a point in  $OP$ , or in  $OP$  produced in either direction, such that  $OQ : QP$  is constant. Find the locus of  $Q$ .

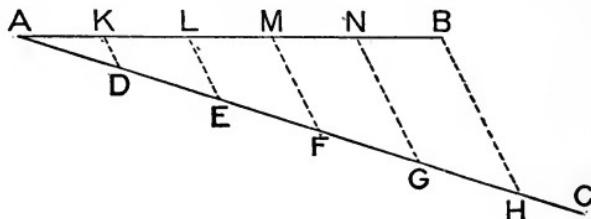
15.  $L$  is any point in the side  $DE$  of a  $\triangle DEF$ . From  $L$  a line drawn  $\parallel EF$  meets  $DF$  at  $M$ . From  $F$  a line drawn  $\parallel ME$  meets  $DE$  produced at  $N$ . Prove that  $DL : DE = DE : DN$ .

16. If from the vertex of a  $\triangle$  perpendiculars are drawn to the bisectors of the exterior  $\angle$ s at the base, the line joining the feet of the perpendiculars is  $\parallel$  the base.

### PROBLEM 1

To divide a given straight line into any number of equal parts.

(*Alternative proof for I Prob. 8*)



Let  $AB$  be the given straight line.

At  $A$  draw  $AC$  making any angle with  $AB$  and from  $AC$  cut off in succession the required number of equal parts.  $AD, DE, EF, FG, GH$ .

Join  $HB$  and through  $D, E, F, G$  draw lines  $\parallel BH$  cutting  $AB$  at  $K, L, M, N$ .

Then  $AK = KL = LM = MN = NB$ .

In  $\triangle AEL$ ,  $DK \parallel EL$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{AD}{DE} = \frac{AK}{KL}. \quad (\text{IV--2, p. 222.})$$

But  $AD = DE$ ,  $\therefore AK = KL$ .

In  $\triangle AFM$ ,  $EL \parallel FM$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{AE}{EF} = \frac{AL}{LM}.$$

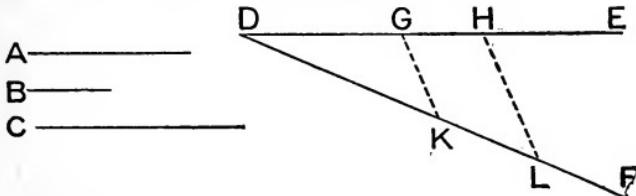
But  $AE = 2 EF$ ,  $\therefore AL = 2 LM$

$\therefore LM = AK$  or  $KL$ .

In the same way it may be proved that  $AK = KL = LM = MN = NB$ .

### PROBLEM 2

To find a fourth proportional to three given straight lines taken in a given order.



Let  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  be the three given st. lines.

From a point  $D$  draw two st. lines  $DE$ ,  $DF$ .

Cut off  $DG = A$ ,  $GH = B$ ,  $DK = C$ .

Join  $GK$ . Through  $H$  draw  $HL \parallel GK$  meeting  $DF$  in  $L$ .

Then  $KL$  is the required fourth proportional.

In  $\triangle DHL$ ,  $GK \parallel HL$ .

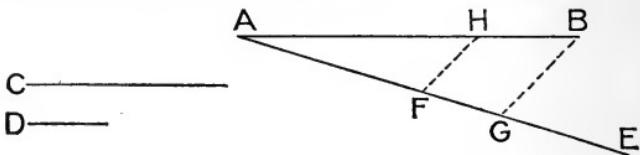
$$\therefore \frac{DG}{GH} = \frac{DK}{KL} \quad (\text{IV--2, p. 222.})$$

$$\text{i.e., } \frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{KL}$$

$\therefore KL$  is the required fourth proportional.

## PROBLEM 3

To divide a given straight line in a given ratio.



Let  $AB$  be the given st. line, and  $\frac{C}{D}$  the given ratio.

Draw  $AE$  making any  $\angle$  with  $AB$ .

On  $AE$  cut off  $AF = C$ ,  $FG = D$ .

Join  $BG$ , and through  $F$  draw  $FH \parallel GB$ .

In  $\triangle ABG$ ,  $\because FH \parallel GB$ ,

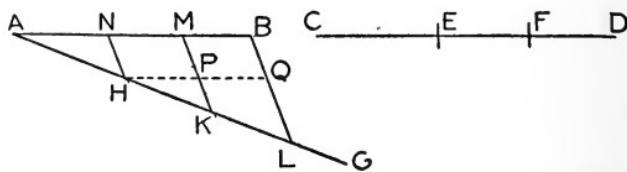
$$\therefore \frac{AH}{HB} = \frac{AF}{FG}. \quad (\text{IV--2,p.222.})$$

But  $AF = C$ , and  $FG = D$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{AH}{HB} = \frac{C}{D}.$$

## PROBLEM 4

To divide a given straight line similarly to a given divided line.



Let  $AB$  be the given st. line, and  $CD$  the given line divided at  $E$  and  $F$ .

At  $A$  draw  $AG$  making any angle with  $AB$ .

From  $AG$  cut off  $AH = CE$ ,  $HK = EF$ ,  $KL = FD$ . Join  $BL$ . Through  $H$ ,  $K$  draw  $HN$ ,  $KM$  both  $\parallel BL$ .

Then **AB** is divided at **N** and **M** similarly to **CD**. Through **H** draw **HPQ**  $\parallel$  **AB**.

*Proof.*—In  $\triangle AMK$ , **NH**  $\parallel$  **MK**,

$$\therefore \frac{AN}{NM} = \frac{AH}{HK}. \quad (\text{IV--2, p. 222.})$$

In  $\triangle HQL$ , **PK**  $\parallel$  **QL**,

$$\therefore \frac{HP}{PQ} = \frac{HK}{KL}.$$

But **HP** = **NM** and **PQ** = **MB**,

$$\therefore \frac{NM}{MB} = \frac{HK}{KL}. \quad (\text{I--20, p. 67.})$$

$$\therefore \frac{AN}{NM} = \frac{CE}{EF} \text{ and } \frac{NM}{MB} = \frac{EF}{FD}.$$

Both these relations are contained in

$$\frac{AN}{CE} = \frac{NM}{EF} = \frac{MB}{FD}.$$

#### 124.—Exercises

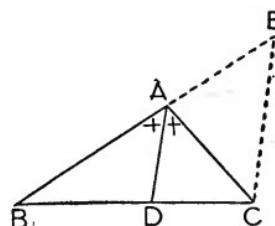
- Divide the area of a given  $\triangle$  into parts that are in the ratio of two given st. lines.
- Divide the area of a  $\parallel\text{gm}$  into parts that are in the ratio of two given st. lines.
- Find a third proportional to two given st. lines. Show how two third proportionals, one greater than either of the given st. lines and the other less than either, may be found.
- Divide a given st. line externally so that the ratio of the segments may equal the ratio of two given st. lines.
- BAC** is a given  $\angle$  and **P** is a given point. Through **P** draw a st. line **DPE** cutting **AB** at **D** and **AC** at **E** such that **DP : PE** equals the ratio of two given st. lines.

6. Divide a given st. line in the ratio  $2 : 3 : 5$ .
7. Construct a  $\triangle$  having its sides in the ratio  $2 : 3 : 4$ , and its perimeter equal to a given st. line.
8. From a given point  $P$  outside the  $\angle X O Y$  draw a line meeting  $O X$  at  $Q$  and  $O Y$  at  $R$  so that  $P Q : Q R =$  a given ratio.

### BISECTOR THEOREMS

#### THEOREM 4

If the vertical angle of a triangle is bisected by a straight line which cuts the base, the segments of the base are proportional to the other sides of the triangle.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AD$  bisects  $\angle BAC$ .

*To prove*  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$ .

*Construction.*—Through  $C$  draw  $CE \parallel AD$  to meet  $BA$  produced at  $E$ .

*Proof.*— $AD \parallel EC$ ,  $\therefore \angle BAD = \angle AEC$ , (I—9, p. 42.)

and  $\angle DAC = \angle ACE$ . (I—8, p. 40.)

But  $\angle BAD = \angle DAC$ , by hypothesis,

$\therefore \angle AEC = \angle ACE$ .

$\therefore AC = AE$ . (I—13, p. 52.)

In  $\triangle EBC$ ,  $AD \parallel EC$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BA}{AE}. \quad (\text{IV--2, p. 222.})$$

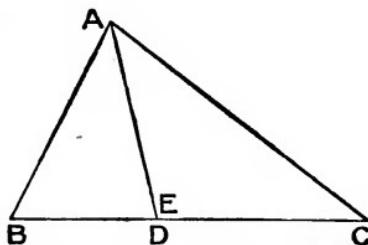
But  $AE = AC$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BA}{AC}.$$

### THEOREM 5

(Converse of Theorem 4)

If the base of a triangle is divided internally into segments that are proportional to the other sides of the triangle, the straight line which joins the point of section to the vertex bisects the vertical angle.



*Hypothesis.* — In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$ .

*To prove that*  $AD$  *bisects*  $\angle BAC$ .

*Construction.* — Bisect  $\angle BAC$  and let the bisector cut  $BC$  at  $E$ .

*Proof.* —  $\because AE$  bisects  $\angle BAC$

$$\therefore \frac{BE}{EC} = \frac{BA}{AC}. \quad (\text{IV--4, p. 230.})$$

But, by hypothesis,  $\frac{BD}{DC} = \frac{BA}{AC}$ .

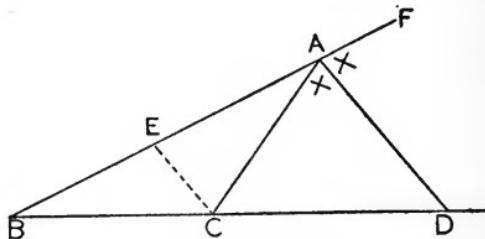
$$\therefore \frac{BE}{EC} = \frac{BD}{DC}.$$

$\therefore E$  and  $D$  coincide.

$\therefore AD$  bisects  $\angle BAC$ .

## THEOREM 6

The bisector of the exterior vertical angle of a triangle divides the base externally into segments that are proportional to the sides of the triangle.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $BA$  is produced to  $F$ .

$\angle FAD$  is bisected by  $AD$  which cuts  $BC$  produced at  $D$ .

*To prove*

$$\frac{BD}{CD} = \frac{BA}{AC}.$$

*Construction.*—Through  $C$  draw  $CE \parallel AD$  to meet  $AB$  at  $E$ .

*Proof.*— $\because EC \parallel AD$ ,  $\therefore \angle FAD = \angle AEC$ . (I—9, p. 42.)

and  $\angle DAC = \angle ACE$ . (I—8, p. 40.)

But, by hypothesis,  $\angle FAD = \angle DAC$ .

$$\therefore \angle AEC = \angle ACE.$$

$$\therefore AC = AE. \quad (\text{I—13, p. 52.})$$

In  $\triangle BAD$ ,  $EC \parallel AD$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{BA}{AE} = \frac{BD}{DC}. \quad (\text{IV—2, Cor., p. 223.})$$

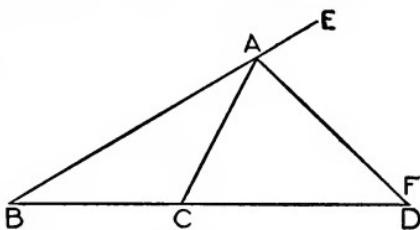
But  $AE = AC$ .

$$\therefore \frac{BA}{AC} = \frac{BD}{CD}.$$

## THEOREM 7

(Converse of Theorem 6)

If the base of a triangle is divided externally so that the segments of the base are proportional to the other sides of the triangle, the straight line which joins the point of section to the vertex bisects the exterior vertical angle.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\frac{BD}{CD} = \frac{BA}{AC}$ , and  $BA$  is produced to  $E$ .

*To prove that  $AD$  bisects  $\angle CAE$ .*

*Construction.*—Bisect  $\angle EAC$  by  $AF$ .

*Proof.*— $\because AF$  bisects exterior  $\angle EAC$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{BF}{CF} = \frac{BA}{AC}. \quad (\text{IV--6, p. 232.})$$

But, by hypothesis,  $\frac{BD}{CD} = \frac{BA}{AC}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{BF}{CF} = \frac{BD}{CD}.$$

$\therefore D$  and  $F$  coincide

$\therefore AD$  bisects  $\angle EAC$ .

## 125.—Exercises

1. The sides of a  $\triangle$  are 4 cm., 5 cm., 6 cm. Calculate the lengths of the segments of each side made by the bisector of the opposite  $\angle$ .

2.  $AD$  bisects  $\angle A$  of  $\triangle ABC$  and meets  $BC$  at  $D$ . Find  $BD$  and  $CD$  in terms of  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ .

3. In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $a = 7$ ,  $b = 5$ ,  $c = 3$ . The bisectors of the exterior  $\angle$ s at  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  meet  $BC$ ,  $CA$ ,  $AB$  respectively at  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$ . Calculate  $BD$ ,  $AE$  and  $AF$ .

4. In  $\triangle ABC$ , the bisector of the exterior  $\angle$  at  $A$  meets  $BC$  produced at  $D$ . Find  $BD$  and  $CD$  in terms of  $a$ ,  $b$  and  $c$ .

5. If a st. line bisects both the vertical  $\angle$  and the base of a  $\triangle$ , the  $\triangle$  is isosceles.

6. The bisectors of the  $\angle$ s of a  $\triangle$  are concurrent. (Use IV—4 and 5.)

7.  $AD$  is a median of  $\triangle ABC$ ;  $\angle$ s  $ADB$ ,  $ADC$  are bisected by  $DE$ ,  $DF$  meeting  $AB$ ,  $AC$  at  $E$ ,  $F$  respectively. Prove  $EF \parallel BC$ .

8. The bisectors of  $\angle$ s  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$  in  $\triangle ABC$  meet  $BC$ ,  $CA$ ,  $AB$  at  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$  respectively. Show that  $AF \cdot BD \cdot CE = FB \cdot DC \cdot EA$ .

9. If the bisectors of  $\angle$ s  $A$ ,  $C$  in the quadrilateral  $ABCD$  meet in the diagonal  $BD$ , the bisectors of  $\angle$ s  $B$ ,  $D$  meet in the diagonal  $AC$ .

10. If the bisectors of  $\angle$ s  $ABC$ ,  $ADC$  in the quadrilateral  $ABCD$  meet at a point in  $AC$ , the bisectors of the exterior  $\angle$ s at  $B$  and  $D$  meet in  $AC$  produced.

11. If  $O$  is the centre of the inscribed circle of  $\triangle DEF$  and  $DO$  produced meets  $EF$  at  $G$ , prove that  $DO : OG = ED + DF : EF$ .

12.  $PQ$  is a chord of a circle  $\perp$  to a diameter  $MN$  and  $D$  is any point in  $PQ$ . The st. lines  $MD$ ,  $ND$  meet the circle at  $E$ ,  $F$  respectively. Prove that any two adjacent sides of the quadrilateral  $PEQF$  are in the same ratio as the other two.

13. The bisector of the vertical  $\angle$  of a  $\triangle$  and the bisectors of the exterior  $\angle$ s at the base are concurrent.

14. One circle touches another internally at **M**. A chord **PQ** of the outer circle touches the inner circle at **T**.

Prove that  $\frac{PT}{TQ} = \frac{PM}{MQ}$ .

15. **L****M****N** is a  $\triangle$  in which  $LM = 3 LN$ . The bisector of  $\angle L$  meets **MN** in **D**, and  $MX \perp LD$ . Prove that  $LD = DX$ .

16. The  $\angle A$  of  $\triangle ABC$  is bisected by **AD**, which cuts the base at **D**, and **O** is the middle point of **BC**. Show that **OD** is to **OB** as the difference of **AB** and **AC** is to their sum.

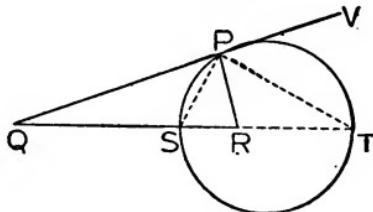
17. The bisectors of the interior and exterior  $\angle$ s at the vertex of a  $\triangle$  divide the base internally and externally in the same ratio.

18. A point **P** moves so that the ratio of its distances from two fixed points **Q**, **R** is constant. Prove that the locus of **P** is a circle. (The Circle of Apollonius.)

Divide **QR** internally at **S** and externally at **T** so that

$$\frac{QS}{SR} = \frac{QT}{TR} = \frac{PQ}{PR}.$$

Join **PS**, **PT**; and produce **QP** to **V**.



$$\therefore \frac{QS}{SR} = \frac{PQ}{PR}, \therefore \angle QPS = \angle SPR.$$

$$\therefore \frac{QT}{TR} = \frac{PQ}{PR}, \therefore \angle RPT = \angle TPV.$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \angle SPT &= \angle QPS + \angle TPV \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \text{ st. } \angle QPV \\ &= \text{ a rt. } \angle;\end{aligned}$$

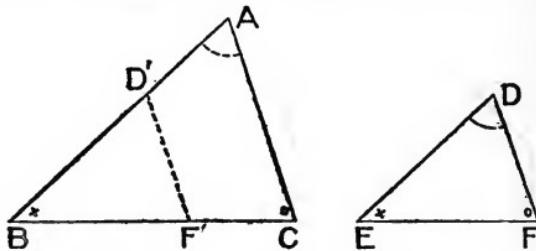
and, hence, a circle described on **ST** as diameter passes through **P**.

19. If **L**, **M**, **N** be three points in a st. line, and **P** a point at which **LM** and **MN** subtend equal  $\angle$ s, the locus of **P** is a circle.

## SIMILAR TRIANGLES

## THEOREM 8

If the angles of one triangle are respectively equal to the angles of another, the corresponding sides of the triangles are proportional.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle s$  ABC, DEF;  $\angle A = \angle D$ ,  $\angle B = \angle E$ ,  $\angle C = \angle F$ .

*To prove*  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD}$ .

*Proof.*—Apply  $\triangle DEF$  to  $\triangle ABC$  so that  $\angle E$  coincides with  $\angle B$ ; the  $\triangle DEF$  taking the position  $D'B'F'$ .

$\therefore \angle BD'F' = \angle A$ ,  $\therefore D'F' \parallel AC$ . (I—7, p. 38.)

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{D'B} = \frac{CB}{F'B} \quad (\text{IV—2, Cor., p. 223.})$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF}.$$

In the same way, by applying the  $\triangle s$  so that  $\angle s$  C and F coincide, it may be proved that  $\frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD}$$

$$\text{Note.} \therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF}, \quad \therefore \frac{AB}{BC} = \frac{DE}{EF},$$

and in the same way  $\frac{BC}{CA} = \frac{EF}{FD}$  and  $\frac{CA}{AB} = \frac{FD}{DE}$ .

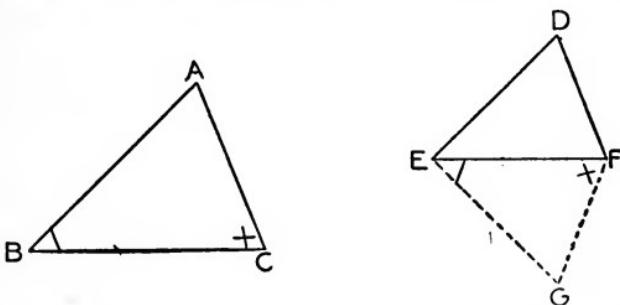
$\therefore$  If two triangles are similar, the corresponding sides about the equal angles are proportional.

Imp.

## THEOREM 9

(Converse of Theorem 8)

If the sides of one triangle are proportional to the sides of another, the triangles are similar, the equal angles being opposite corresponding sides.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle s$  ABC, DEF;  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{CA}{FD}$ .

*To prove*  $\angle A = \angle D$ ,  $\angle B = \angle DEF$ ,  $\angle C = \angle DFE$ .

*Construction.*—Make  $\angle FEG = \angle B$ ,  $\angle EFG = \angle C$ .

*Proof.*—In  $\triangle s$  ABC, GEF  $\begin{cases} \angle A = \angle G, \\ \angle B = \angle GEF, \\ \angle C = \angle EFG. \end{cases}$

$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle GEF$ .

$\therefore \frac{AB}{GE} = \frac{BC}{EF}$ . (IV—8, p. 236.)

But, by hypothesis,  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF}$ .

$\therefore \frac{AB}{GE} = \frac{AB}{DE}$ ,  $\therefore GE = DE$ .

Similarly it may be proved that  $GF = DF$ .

In  $\triangle s$  DEF, GEF  $\begin{cases} DE = GE, \\ EF \text{ is common,} \\ FD = FG. \end{cases}$

$\therefore \triangle DEF \cong \triangle GEF$ . (I—4, p. 22.)

$\therefore \angle DEF = \angle GEF = \angle B$ ,  $\angle DFE = \angle GFE = \angle C$ .

$\therefore$  remaining  $\angle D =$  remaining  $\angle A$ .

## 126.—Exercises

1. The st. line joining the middle points of the sides of a  $\triangle$  is  $\parallel$  to the base, and equal to half of it.
2. If two sides of a quadrilateral be  $\parallel$ , the diagonals cut each other proportionally.
3. In the  $\triangle ABC$  the medians  $BE, CF$  cut at  $G$ . Show that  $BG = \text{twice } GE$ , and  $CG = \text{twice } GF$ .
4. Using the theorem in Ex. 3, devise a method of trisecting a st. line.
5. If three st. lines meet at a point, they intercept on any  $\parallel$  st. lines portions which are proportional to one another.
6. In similar  $\triangle$ s  $\perp$ s from corresponding vertices to the opposite sides are in the same ratio as the corresponding sides.
7. In similar  $\triangle$ s the bisectors of two corresponding  $\angle$ s, terminated by the opposite sides, are in the same ratio as the corresponding sides.
8. ~~A~~  $ABCD$  is a  $\parallel$ gm, and a line through  $A$  cuts  $BD$  at  $E$ ,  $BC$  at  $F$  and meets  $DC$  produced at  $G$ . Show that  $AE : EF = AG : AF$ .
9. If two  $\parallel$  st. lines  $AB, CD$  be divided at  $E, F$  respectively so that  $AE : EB = CF : FD$ , then  $AC, BD$  and  $EF$  are concurrent.
10. The median drawn to a side of a  $\triangle$  bisects all st. lines  $\parallel$  to that side and terminated by the other two sides, or those sides produced.
11. ~~A~~  $ABCD$  is a  $\parallel$ gm.  $AD$  is bisected at  $E$  and  $BC$  at  $F$ . Show that  $AF$  and  $CE$  trisect the diagonal  $BD$ .
12. If the st. lines  $OAB, OCD, OEF$  be similarly divided, the  $\triangle$ s  $ACE, BDF$  are similar.

13. If the corresponding sides of two similar  $\triangle$ s be  $\parallel$ , the st. lines joining the corresponding vertices are concurrent.

14.  $\triangle LMN \sim \triangle PQR$ ,  $\angle L = \angle P$  and  $\angle M = \angle Q$ .  $LM = 7$  cm.,  $MN = 5$  cm.,  $LN = 9$  cm.,  $QR = 4$  cm. Find  $PQ$  and  $PR$ .

15. In  $\triangle DEF$ ,  $DE = 13$  cm.,  $EF = 5$  cm. and  $DF = 12$  cm. The  $\triangle$  is folded so that the point  $D$  falls on the point  $E$ . Find the length of the crease.

16.  $LMN$  is a  $\triangle$  and  $X$  is any point in  $MN$ . Prove that the radii of the circles circumscribing  $LMX$ ,  $LNX$  are proportional to  $LM$ ,  $LN$ .

17. St. lines  $POQ$ ,  $ROS$  are drawn so that  $PO = 2 OQ$  and  $RO = 2 OS$ .  $RQ$  and  $PS$  are produced to meet at  $T$ . Prove that  $PS = ST$  and  $RQ = QT$ .

18.  $FDE$ ,  $GDE$  are two circles and  $FDG$  is a st. line.  $FE$ ,  $GE$  are drawn. Prove that  $FE$  is to  $GE$  as diameter of circle  $FDE$  is to diameter of  $GDE$ .

19.  $P$  is any point on either arm of an  $\angle XOY$ , and  $PN \perp$  to the other arm. Show that  $\frac{PN}{OP}$  has the same value for all positions of  $P$ .

Show also that  $\frac{ON}{OP}$  has the same value for all positions of  $P$ ; and that  $\frac{PN}{ON}$  has the same value for all positions of  $P$ .

(NOTE.—*The ratio  $\frac{PN}{OP}$  is called the sine of the  $\angle XOY$ ,  $\frac{ON}{OP}$  is the cosine of that  $\angle$ , and  $\frac{PN}{ON}$  is the tangent of the same  $\angle$ .*)

20. **PQRS** is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle. The diagonals **PR**, **QS** cut at **X**. Prove that  $\frac{PQ}{SR} = \frac{XP}{XS}$ .

21. **OX**, **OY**, **OZ** are three fixed st. lines, and **P** is any point in **OZ**. From **P**, **PL** is drawn  $\perp$  **OX** and **PM**  $\perp$  **OY**. Prove that the ratio **PL** : **PM** is constant.

22. In the quadrilateral **DEFG** the side **DE**  $\parallel$  **GF** and the diagonals **DF**, **EG** cut at **H**. Through **H** the line **LHM** is drawn  $\parallel$  **DE** and meeting **EF**, **DG** at **L**, **M** respectively. Prove **HL** = **HM**.

23. **KLMN** is a quadrilateral in which **KL**  $\parallel$  **NM**. Prove that the line joining the middle points of **KL** and **MN** passes through the intersection of the diagonals **KM**, **LN**.

24. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$  and **G** is any point in **EF**. The bisector of  $\angle DGF$  meets **DF** in **H**. **EH** cuts **DG** at **K**. **FK** meets **DE** at **L**. Prove that **LG** bisects  $\angle DGE$ .

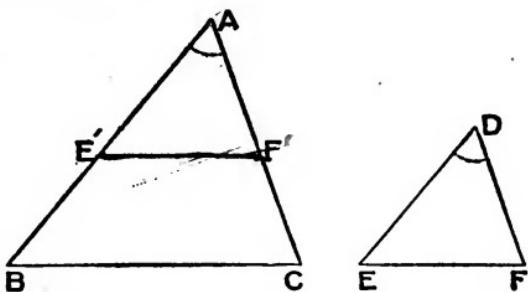
25. **DG** and **DH** bisect the interior and exterior  $\angle$ s at **D** of a  $\triangle$  **DEF**, and meet **EF** at **G** and **H**; and **O** is the middle point of **EF**. Show that **OE** is a mean proportional between **OG** and **OH**.

26. **DG** bisects  $\angle D$  of  $\triangle$  **DEF** and meets **EF** at **G**. **GK** bisects  $\angle DGE$  and meets **DE** at **K**. **GH** bisects  $\angle DGF$  and meets **DF** at **H**. Prove that  $\triangle EKH : \triangle FKH = ED : DF$ .

---

## THEOREM 10

If two triangles have one angle of one equal to one angle of the other and the sides about these angles proportional, the triangles are similar, the equal angles being opposite corresponding sides.



*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\triangle DEF$ ,  $\angle A = \angle D$

$$\text{and } \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{DF}.$$

*To prove*  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$ .

*Proof.*—Apply the  $\triangle$ s so that  $\angle D$  coincides with  $\angle A$  and  $\triangle DEF$  takes the position  $AE'F'$ .

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{DF},$$

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{AE'} = \frac{AC}{AF'}, \therefore E'F' \parallel BC. (\text{IV--3, p. 224.})$$

$$\therefore \angle B = \angle AE'F', \angle C = \angle AF'E', (\text{I--9, p. 42.})$$

$$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle AE'F'.$$

But  $\triangle AE'F'$  is the triangle  $DEF$  in its new position,

$$\therefore \triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF.$$

The equal  $\angle$ s  $B$ ,  $E$  are respectively opposite the corresponding sides  $AC$ ,  $DF$ , also the equal  $\angle$ s  $C$ ,  $F$  are respectively opposite the corresponding sides  $AB$ ,  $DE$ .

## THEOREM 11

If two triangles have two sides of one proportional to two sides of the other, and the angles opposite one pair of corresponding sides in the proportion equal, the angles opposite the other pair of corresponding sides in the proportion are either equal or supplementary.

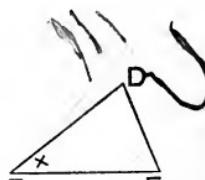
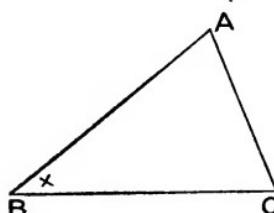


FIG. 1

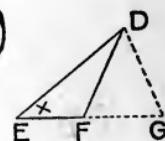


FIG. 2

*Hypothesis.*—In  $\triangle s$  ABC, DEF,  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{DF}$  and  $\angle B = \angle E$ .

*To prove* either  $\angle C = \angle F$  or  $\angle C + \angle DFE = 2$  rt.  $\angle$ s.

*Proof.*—(1) If  $\angle A = \angle D$ . (Fig. 1.)

$\because \angle A = \angle D$ , and  $\angle B = \angle E$ ,  $\therefore \angle C = \angle F$ .

In this case  $\triangle ABC \parallel\!\!|\triangle DEF$ .

(2) If  $\angle A$  is not equal to  $\angle D$ . (Fig. 2.)

At D make  $\angle EDG = \angle A$  and produce DG to meet EF, produced if necessary, at G.

In  $\triangle s$  ABC, DEG  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle A = \angle EDG, \\ \angle B = \angle E, \\ \therefore \angle C = \angle G. \end{array} \right.$

$\therefore \triangle ABC \parallel\!\!|\triangle DEG$ .

$\therefore \frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{DG}$ . (IV—8, p. 236.)

But, by hypothesis,  $\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{DF}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{AC}{DG} = \frac{AC}{DF}, \therefore DG = DF.$$

In  $\triangle DFG$ ,  $\because DF = DG$ ,  $\therefore \angle DGF = \angle DFG$ .

But  $\angle DGF = \angle C$ ,  $\therefore \angle DFG = \angle C$ .

$$\angle DFE + \angle DFG = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle s,$$

$$\therefore \angle DFE + \angle C = 2 \text{ rt. } \angle s.$$

### 127.—Exercises

1. Show that certain propositions of Book I are respectively particular cases of Theorems 9, 10 and 11 of Book IV.
2. In similar  $\triangle$ s medians drawn from corresponding vertices are proportional to the corresponding sides.
3. In a  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $AD$  is drawn  $\perp BC$ . If  $BD : DA = DA : DC$ , prove that  $BAC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ .
4. If the diagonals of a quadrilateral divide each other proportionally, one pair of sides are  $\parallel$ .
5. A point  $D$  is taken within a  $\triangle LMN$  and joined to  $L$  and  $M$ . A  $\triangle EMN$  is described on the other side of  $MN$  from  $\triangle LMN$  having  $\angle EMN = \angle DML$ , and  $\angle ENM = \angle DLM$ . Prove that  $\triangle DME \sim \triangle LMN$ .
6.  $M$ ,  $N$  are fixed points on the circumference of a given circle, and  $P$  is any other point on the circumference.  $MP$  is produced to  $Q$  so that  $PQ : PN$  is a fixed ratio. Find the locus of  $Q$ .
7.  $EOD$ ,  $GOF$  are two st. lines such that  $GO : DO = EO : FO$ . Prove that  $E$ ,  $F$ ,  $D$ ,  $G$  are conyclic.
8.  $OEF$ ,  $OGD$  are two st. lines such that  $OE : OG = OD : OF$ . Prove that  $E$ ,  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $D$  are conyclic.
9.  $DEF$  is a  $\triangle$ , and  $FX \perp DE$ . Prove that, if  $DF : FX = DE : EF$ ,  $\angle XFE = \angle D$ .

10. Similar isosceles  $\triangle$ s **DEF**, **DEG** are described on opposite sides of **DE** such that **DF** = **DE** and **GD** = **GE**. **H** is any point in **DF** and **K** is taken in **GD** such that **GK : GD** = **DH : DF**. Prove  $\triangle KHE \sim \triangle GDE$ .

11. **L****M****N** is a  $\triangle$ , and **D** is any point in **LM** produced. **E** is taken in **NM** such that **NE : EM** = **LD : DM**. Prove that **DE** produced bisects **LN**.

12. **O** is the centre and **OD** a radius of a circle. **E** is any point in **OD**, and **F** is taken in **OD** produced such that **OF** is a third proportional to **OE**, **OD**. **P** is any point on the circumference. Prove  $\angle FPD = \angle DPE$ .

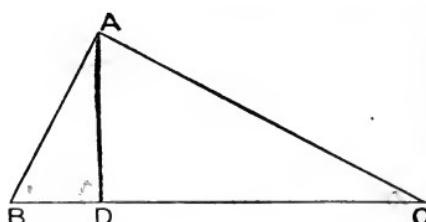
13. The bisectors of the interior and exterior  $\angle$ s at **L** in the  $\triangle$  **L****M****N** meet **MN** and **MN** produced at **D**, **E** respectively. **FNG** drawn  $\parallel LM$  meets **LE** at **F** and **LD** produced at **G**. Prove **FN** = **NG**.

14. If one pair of  $\angle$ s of two  $\triangle$ s be equal and another pair of  $\angle$ s be supplementary, the ratios of the sides opposite to these pairs of  $\angle$ s are equal to each other.

### GEOMETRIC MEANS

#### THEOREM 12

The perpendicular from the right angle to the hypotenuse in a right-angled triangle divides the triangle into two triangles which are similar to each other and to the original triangle.



*Hypothesis.—*In  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\angle BAC$  is a rt.  $\angle$  and  $AD \perp BC$ .

*To prove*  $\triangle ABD \sim \triangle CAD \sim \triangle CBA$ .

*Proof.*—

In  $\triangle s ABD, CBA$   $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle B \text{ is common.} \\ \angle BDA = \angle BAC, \text{ both rt. } \angle s. \\ \therefore \angle BAD = \angle BCA. \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \triangle ABD \sim \triangle CBA$$

Similarly  $\triangle ADC \sim \triangle CBA$ .

$$\therefore \triangle ABD \sim \triangle CAD \sim \triangle CBA.$$

Cor. 1.—  $\because \triangle ABD \sim \triangle CAD$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{AD} = \frac{AD}{CD}.$$

$\therefore AD$  is the mean proportional between  $BD$  and  $DC$ .

Cor. 2.—Because  $\triangle ABD \sim \triangle CBA$

$$\therefore \frac{BD}{AB} = \frac{AB}{BC}.$$

$\therefore AB$  is the mean proportional between  $BD$  and  $BC$ .

Similarly—

$AC$  is the mean proportional between  $DC$  and  $CB$ .

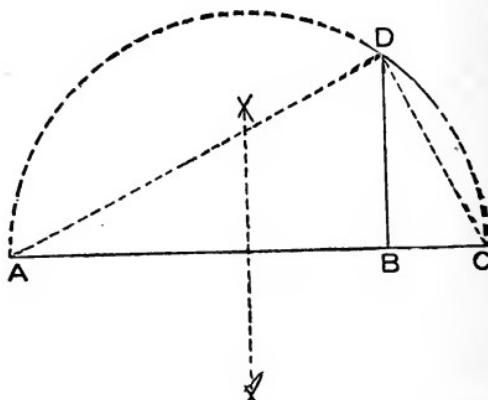
Cor. 3.—Because  $\triangle CBA \sim \triangle CAD$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{CB}{BA} = \frac{CA}{AD}.$$

i.e., the hypotenuse is to one side as the other side is to the perpendicular.

## PROBLEM 5

To find the mean proportional between two given straight lines.



From a st. line cut off **AB**, **BC** respectively equal to the two given st. lines.

It is required to find the mean proportional to **AB**, **BC**.

On **AC** as diameter describe a semi-circle **ADC**. From **B** draw **BD**  $\perp$  **AC** and meeting the arc **ADC** at **D**.

**BD** is the required mean proportional.

Join **AD**, **DC**.

*Prob.*—  $\because$  **ADC** is a semi-circle,  
 $\therefore \angle ADC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ . (III—9, p. 160.)

In  $\triangle ADC$ ,  $\angle ADC$  is a rt.  $\angle$ ,  
 and  $DB \perp AC$ .

$\therefore \frac{AB}{BD} = \frac{DB}{BC}$ . (IV—12, Cor. 1, p. 245.)

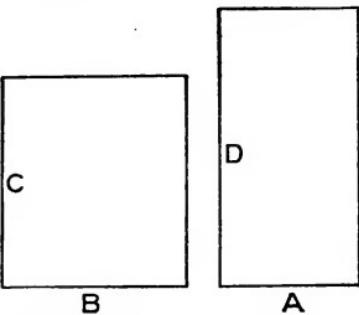
$\therefore$  **BD** is the mean proportional between **AB** and **BC**.

## RECTANGLES

## THEOREM 13

If four straight lines are proportionals, the rectangle contained by the means is equal to the rectangle contained by the extremes.

$$\begin{array}{l} \text{A} \text{_____} \\ \text{B} \text{_____} \\ \text{C} \text{_____} \\ \text{D} \text{_____} \end{array}$$



*Hypothesis.*—**A, B, C, D** are four st. lines such that  
 $\frac{A}{B} = \frac{C}{D}$ .

*To prove that* rect. **B.C** = rect. **A.D**.

Let  $a, b, c, d$  be the numerical measures of **A, B, C, D** respectively.

Then  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ .

$$\therefore bc = ad.$$

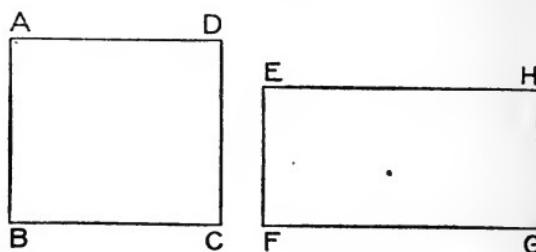
But  $bc$  is the numerical measure of **B.C** and  $ad$  is the numerical measure of **A.D**,

$$\therefore \text{rect. } \mathbf{B.C} = \text{rect. } \mathbf{A.D.}$$

## THEOREM 14

(Converse of Theorem 13)

If two rectangles are equal to each other, the length of one is to the length of the other as the breadth of the second is to the breadth of the first.



*Hypothesis.*—Rect. ABCD = rect. EFGH.

To prove

$$\frac{BC}{FG} = \frac{EF}{AB}.$$

*Proof.*—Let  $a, b, c, d$  be the numerical measures of BC, BA, FG, EF respectively.

Then since the rectangles are equal,

$$ab = cd.$$

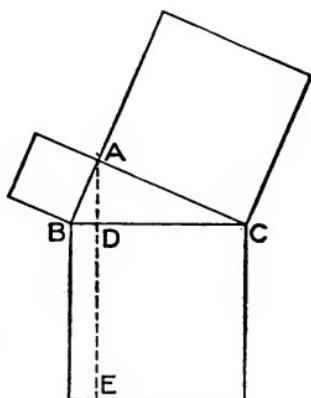
$$\therefore \frac{a}{c} = \frac{d}{b},$$

$$\therefore \frac{BC}{FG} = \frac{EF}{AB}.$$

---

*Alternative proof of the Pythagorean Theorem.*  
(II—13, p. 122.)

The square on the hypotenuse of a right-angled triangle equals the sum of the squares on the other two sides.



*Hypothesis.*—**BAC** is a  $\triangle$  having  $\angle BAC$  a rt.  $\angle$ , and having squares described on the three sides.

*To prove that*  $BC^2 = BA^2 + AC^2$ .

*Construction.*—Draw  $AD \perp BC$ .

*Proof.*— $\because$  **BAC** is a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  with  $AD \perp$  the hypotenuse **BC**,

$$\therefore \frac{BC}{BA} = \frac{BA}{BD}. \quad (\text{IV—12, Cor. 2, p. 245.})$$

$$\therefore BA^2 = BC \cdot BD. \quad (\text{IV—13, p. 247.})$$

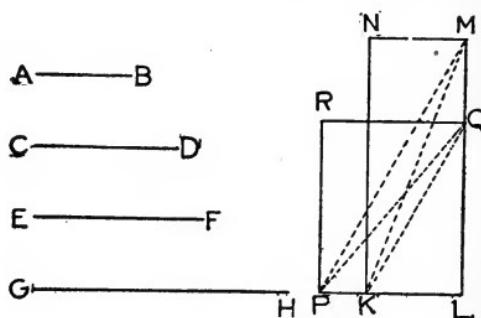
Similarly  $CA^2 = BC \cdot CD$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore BA^2 + CA^2 &= BC \cdot BD + BC \cdot CD \\ &= BC(BD + CD) \\ &= BC \cdot BC \\ &= BC^2 \end{aligned}$$

i.e.,  $BC^2 = BA^2 + CA^2$ .

## 128.—Exercises

- Give a general enunciation of IV—12, Cor. 1.
- Give a general enunciation of IV—12, Cor. 2.
- Give an alternative proof of IV—13, using the construction indicated in the following diagram:—



$\frac{AB}{CD} = \frac{EF}{GH}$ . In the rectangles **NL**, **RL**, **KL** = **AB**, **LM** = **GH**, **PL** = **CD** and **LQ** = **EF**.

Using a similar construction give also an alternative proof of IV—14.

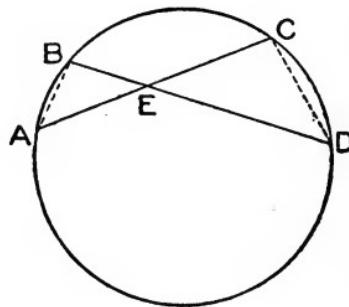
- In any two equal  $\triangle$ s **ABC**, **DEF**, if **AG**, **DH** be  $\perp$ s to **BC**, **EF** respectively, **AG** : **DH** = **EF** : **BC**.
- In any  $\triangle$  the  $\perp$ s from the vertices to the opposite sides are inversely as the sides.
- In the diagram of IV—12, show that rect. **AD.BC** = rect. **BA.AC**. Give a general statement of this theorem.
- ABC**, **DEF** are two equal  $\triangle$ s having also  $\angle B = \angle E$ . Show that  $\frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{DE}{AB}$ .
- ABCD**, **EFGH** are two equal ||gms having also  $\angle B = \angle F$ . Show that  $\frac{BC}{FG} = \frac{FE}{BA}$ .
- ABCD** is a given rect. and **EF** a given st. line. It is required to make a rect. equal in area to **ABCD** and having one of its sides equal to **EF**.

10. Make a rect. equal in area to a given  $\triangle$  and having one of its sides equal to a given st. line.
11. Show how to construct a rect. equal in area to a given polygon and having one of its sides equal to a given st. line.
12. If from any point on the circumference of a circle a  $\perp$  be drawn to a diameter, the square on the  $\perp$  equals the rect. contained by the segments of the diameter.
13. Construct a square equal to a given rect.
14. Construct a square equal to a given  $\parallel$ gm.
15. Construct a square equal to a given  $\triangle$ .
16. Draw a square having its area 12 sq. inches.
17. Divide a given st. line into two parts such that the rect. contained by the parts is equal to the square on another given st. line.
18. If a st. line be divided into two parts, the rect. contained by the parts is greatest when the line is bisected.
19. **A****B** and **C** are two given st. lines. Find a point **D** in **A****B** produced such that rect. **A****D**.**D****B** = sq. on **C**.
20. Construct a rect. equal in area to a given square and having its perimeter equal to a given st. line.  
When will the solution be impossible?
21. Show how to construct a square equal in area to a given polygon.
22. In the corresponding sides **B****C**, **E****F** of the similar  $\triangle$ s **A****B****C**, **D****E****F** the points **G**, **H** are taken such that **B****G** : **G****C** = **E****H** : **H****F**. Prove **A****G** : **D****H** = **B****C** : **E****F**.

## CHORDS AND TANGENTS

## THEOREM 15

If two chords intersect within a circle, the rectangle contained by the segments of one is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the other.



*Hypothesis.*—In the circle ABC, the chords AC, BD intersect at E.

*To prove that*  $\text{rect. } AE \cdot EC = \text{rect. } BE \cdot ED$ .

*Construction.*—Join AB, CD.

*Proof.*— $\because \angle s ABD, ACD$  are in the same segment,

$$\therefore \angle ABD = \angle ACD. \quad (\text{III--7, p. 156.})$$

Similarly,  $\angle BAC = \angle BDC$ .

And  $\angle AEB = \angle CED. \quad (\text{I--1, p. 13.})$

$$\therefore \triangle AEB \parallel \triangle CED.$$

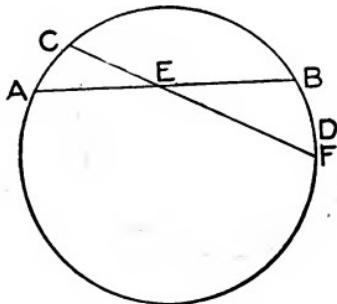
$$\therefore \frac{AE}{ED} = \frac{BE}{EC}. \quad (\text{IV--8, p. 236.})$$

$$\therefore \text{rect. } AE \cdot EC = \text{rect. } BE \cdot ED. \quad (\text{IV--13, p. 247.})$$

## THEOREM 16

(Converse of IV—15)

If two straight lines cut each other so that the rectangle contained by the segments of one is equal to the rectangle contained by the segments of the other, the four extremities of the two straight lines are concyclic.



*Hypothesis*—The st. lines **AB**, **CD** cut at **E** so that  
rect. **AE.EB** = rect. **CE.ED**.

*To prove that A, C, B, D are concyclic.*

*Construction.*—Describe a circle through **A, C, B**, and let it cut **ED**, produced if necessary, at **F**.

*Proof.*—  $\because$  **AB**, **CF** are chords of a circle,

$$\therefore \text{rect. } AE.EB = \text{rect. } CE.EF. \quad (\text{IV-15, p. 252.})$$

But,  $AE.EB = CE.ED.$  (Hyp.)

$$\therefore \text{rect. } CE.EF = \text{rect. } CE.ED.$$

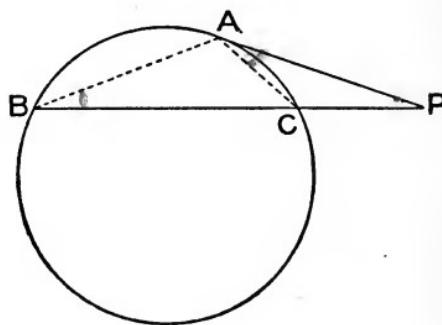
And  $\therefore EF = ED.$

$\therefore F$  coincides with **D**,

and the points **A, C, B, D** are concyclic.

## THEOREM 17

If from a point without a circle, a secant and a tangent are drawn, the square on the tangent is equal to the rectangle contained by the secant, and the part of it without the circle.



*Hypothesis.*— $PA$  is a tangent and  $PCB$  a secant to the circle  $ABC$ .

*To prove that*  $PA^2 = PB \cdot PC$ .

*Construction.*—Join  $AB$ ,  $AC$ .

*Proof.*— $\because AP$  is a tangent, and  $AC$  is a chord from the same point  $A$ ,

$$\therefore \angle PAC = \angle ABC. \quad (\text{III--15, p. 177.})$$

In  $\triangle PAB$ ,  $PCA$ ,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \angle P \text{ is common,} \\ \angle PBA = \angle PAC, \\ \text{and } \therefore \angle PAB = \angle PCA, \end{array} \right.$

$$\therefore \triangle PAB \sim \triangle PCA.$$

$$\therefore \frac{PB}{PA} = \frac{PA}{PC}. \quad (\text{IV--8, p. 236.})$$

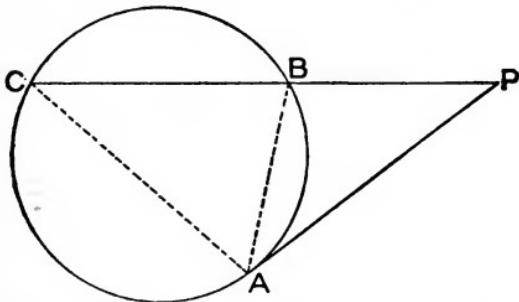
$$\therefore PA^2 = PB \cdot PC. \quad (\text{IV--13, p. 247.})$$

*Dmp*

## THEOREM 18

(Converse of IV-17)

If from a point without a circle two straight lines are drawn, one of which is a secant and the other meets the circle so that the square on the line which meets the circle is equal to the rectangle contained by the secant and the part of it without the circle, the line which meets the circle is a tangent.



*Hypothesis.*—PA and PBC are drawn to the circle ABC so that  $PA^2 = PB \cdot PC$ .

*To prove that PA is a tangent.*

*Construction.*—Join AB, AC.

*Proof.*—In  $\triangle PAB$ ,  $\triangle PAC$ ,  $\angle P$  is common,

and  $\therefore PA^2 = PB \cdot PC$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{PA}{PB} = \frac{PC}{PA}. \quad (\text{IV-14, p. 248.})$$

$\therefore \triangle PAB \sim \triangle PCA. \quad (\text{IV-10, p. 241.})$

$\therefore \angle PAB = \angle PCA$ .

$\therefore PA$  coincides with the tangent  
at A.  $\quad (\text{III-15, p. 177.})$

i.e., PA is a tangent to the circle.

*NOTE.*—Prove this proposition with the following construction:—Draw a tangent from P, and join the point of contact and the points A, P to the centre.

## 129.—Exercises

1. **PAB, PCD** are two secants drawn from a point **P** without a circle. Show that  $\text{rect. } \mathbf{PA} \cdot \mathbf{PB} = \text{rect. } \mathbf{PC} \cdot \mathbf{PD}$ .

From this exercise deduce a proof for IV—17.

2. If in two st. lines **PB, PD** points **A, C** respectively be taken such that  $\text{rect. } \mathbf{PA} \cdot \mathbf{PB} = \text{rect. } \mathbf{PC} \cdot \mathbf{PD}$ , the four points **A, B, C, D** are concyclic.

3. If two circles intersect, their common chord bisects their common tangents.

✓ 4. If two circles intersect, the tangents drawn to them from any point in their common chord produced are equal to each other.

✓ 5. Through **P** any point in the common chord, or the common chord produced, of two intersecting circles two lines are drawn cutting one circle at **A, B** and the other at **C, D**. Show that **A, B, C, D** are concyclic.

✓ 6. Through a point **P** within a circle, any chord **APB** is drawn. If **O** be the centre, show that  $\text{rect. } \mathbf{AP} \cdot \mathbf{PB} = \mathbf{OA}^2 - \mathbf{OP}^2$ .

✓ 7. From any point **P** without a circle any secant **PAB** is drawn. If **O** be the centre, show that  $\text{rect. } \mathbf{PA} \cdot \mathbf{PB} = \mathbf{OP}^2 - \mathbf{OA}^2$ .

8. From a given point as centre describe a circle cutting a given st. line in two points, so that the rectangle contained by their distances from a given point in the st. line may be equal to a given square.

✓ 9. Describe a circle to pass through two given points and touch a given st. line.

10. If three circles be drawn so that each intersects the other two, the common chords of each pair meet at a point.

11. Find a point **D**, in the side **BC** of  $\triangle ABC$ , such that the sq. on **AD** = rect. **BD.DC**. When is the solution possible?
12. Use IV—17 to find a mean proportional to two given st. lines.
13. **P** is a point at a distance of 7 cm. from the centre of a circle. **PDE** is a secant such that **PD** = 5 cm. and **DE** = 3 cm. Find the length of the radius of the circle.
14. In a circle of radius 4 cm. a chord **DE** is drawn 7 cm. in length. **F** is a point in **DE** such that **DF** = 5 cm. Find the distance of **F** from the centre of the circle.
15. **DEF** is an isosceles  $\triangle$  in which **ED** = **EF**. A circle, which passes through **D** and touches **EF** at its middle point cuts **DE** at **H**. Prove that **DH** = 3 **HE**.
16. In a circle two chords **DE**, **FG** cut at **H**. Prove that  $(FH - HG)^2 - (DH - HE)^2 = FG^2 - DE^2$ .
17. **LND**, **MNE** are two chords intersecting inside a circle and **LM** is a diameter. Prove that  $LN \cdot LD + MN \cdot ME = LM^2$ .
18. **DEF**, **HGF** are two circles and **DFG** is a fixed st. line. Show how to draw a st. line **EFH** such that **EF.FH** = **DF.FG**.
19. **P** is a point in the diameter **DE** of a circle, and **PT** is the  $\perp$  on the tangent at a point **Q**. Prove that **PT.DE** = **DP.PE** + **PQ**<sup>2</sup>.
20. **P**, **Q**, **R**, **S** are four points in order in the same st. line. Find a point **O** in this st. line such that **OP.OR** = **OQ.OS**.
21. The tangent at **P** to a circle, whose centre is **O** meets two  $\parallel$  tangents in **Q**, **R**. Prove that **PQ.PR** = **OP**<sup>2</sup>.
-

### Miscellaneous Exercises

1. **EFGH** is a ||gm, **P** a point in **EF** such that  $EP:PF = m:n$ . What fraction is  $\triangle EPH$  of the ||gm?
2. **EFGH** is a ||gm, **P** is a point in the diagonal **FH** such that  $FP:PH = 2:5$ . What fraction of the ||gm is  $\triangle EFP$ ? If  $FP:PH = m:n$  find the fraction.
3. **EFGH** is a ||gm, **P** is a point in the diagonal **FH** produced such that  $FP:PH = 9:5$ . What fraction of the ||gm is the  $\triangle PEH$ ?
4. **KLMN** is a ||gm. Any st. line **EKG** is drawn cutting the sides **ML** and **MN** produced at **E** and **G**. Show that half the ||gm is a mean proportional between  $\triangle s$  **EKL** and **NKG**.
5. The  $\triangle PQR$  has **PQ** and **QR** divided at **D** and **E** such that  $PD:DQ = QE:ER = 1:3$ . **PE** and **RD** intersect at **O**. Find the ratios of the  $\triangle s$   **PDO:OPR:OER:PQR**.
6. **D** and **E** are points in **PQ** and **PR** sides of the  $\triangle PQR$  such that  $QD:DP = PE:ER = m:n$ . Compare the areas of the  $\triangle s$  **QDE** and **DER**.
7. Either of the complements of the ||gms about the diagonal of a ||gm is a mean proportional between the two ||gms about the diagonal.
8. **LMN** is an isosceles  $\triangle$  having  $LM = LN$ , **LD** is perpendicular to **MN**, **P** is a point in **LN** such that  $LP:LM = 1:3$ . Prove that **MP** bisects **LD**.
9. Through **E** one of the vertices of a rectangle **EFGH** any st. line is drawn, and **HP** and **FQ** are  $\perp s$  to **PEQ**. Prove  $PE \cdot EQ = HP \cdot FQ$ .
10. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$ , **P** and **Q** are points in **DE** and **DF**, and  $DP:PE = 3:5$  and  $DQ:QF = 7:8$ . In what ratio is **PQ** cut by the median **DG**?

11. **DEFG** is a ||gm, and **EF** is produced to **K** so that **FK = EF**; **DK** cuts **EG** at **P**. Show that  $GP = \frac{1}{2} EG$ .
12. The diagonals of the ||gm **EFGH** intersect at **O**; if **E** be joined to the middle point **P** of **OH**, and **EP** and **FG** meet at **K**, find  $GK:EH$ .
13. **DEF** is a right-angled  $\triangle$ , **E** being the right angle. **G** is taken in **DE** produced such that  $DG:GF = DF:EF$ . Prove that  $\angle DFG$  is right.
14. If the perpendicular to the base of a  $\triangle$  from the vertex be a mean proportional to the segments of the base, the triangle is right angled.
15. **DGH** is any  $\triangle$ , and from **K** the middle point of **GH** a line is drawn cutting **DH** at **E** and **GD** produced at **F**. Prove  $GF:FD = HE:ED$ . Prove the converse also.
16. **AD** and **AE** are the interior and exterior bisectors of the vertical angle of  $\triangle ABC$  meeting the base at **D** and **E**. Through **C**, **FCG** is drawn  $\parallel$  to **AB** meeting **AD** and **AE** at **F** and **G**. Prove that  $FC = CG$ .
17. **HKL** is an isosceles  $\triangle$ , having  $HK = HL$ ; **KL** is produced to **D** and **DEF** is drawn cutting **HL** at **E**, and **HK** at **F**. Prove  $DE:DF = EL:KF$ .
18. **DP** and **DQ** are perpendiculars to the bisectors of the interior angles **E** and **F** of any  $\triangle DEF$ . Prove  $PQ \parallel EF$ .
19. **PX** and **QY** are perpendiculars from **P** and **Q** to **XY**; **PY** and **QX** intersect at **R**, and **RZ** is perpendicular to **XY**. Prove  $\angle PZX = \angle QZY$ .
20. **ABC** is any  $\triangle$ , and **AD** is taken along **AC** such that  $AC:AB = AB:AD$ ; also **CF** is taken along **AC** such that  $AC:CB = CB:CF$ . Prove  $BF = BD$ .
21. The perpendicular **KD** to the hypotenuse **HL** of a right-angled  $\triangle KHL$  is produced to **E** such that  $KD:DH = DH:DE$ . Prove  $HE \parallel KL$ .

22. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle, and **P** and **Q** are taken in **DE** and **DF** such that  $DP:PE = DQ:QF$ . Show that the circle described about **D, P, Q** touches the given circle at **D**.

23. **D** is a point in **LM** a side of  $\triangle LMN$ , **DE** is  $\parallel$  to **MN** and **EF**  $\parallel$  to **LM**, meeting the sides at **E** and **F**. Prove  $LD:DM = MF:FN$ .

24. A variable line through a fixed point **O** meets two  $\parallel$  st. lines at **P** and **Q**. Prove  $OP:OQ$  a constant ratio.

25. If the nonparallel sides of a trapezium are cut in the same ratio by a st. line, show that this line is  $\parallel$  to the  $\parallel$  sides.

26. **ABCDE** is a polygon, **O** a point within it. If **X, Y, Z, P, Q** are points in **OA, OB, OC, OD, OE** such that  $OX:OA = OY:OB = \text{etc.}$ , show that the sides of **XYZPQ** are  $\parallel$  to those of **ABCDE**.

27. **DE** is a st. line, **F** any point in it; find a point **P** in **DE** produced such that  $PD:PE = DF:FE$ .

28. St. lines **PD, PE, PF** and **PG** are such that each of the  $\angle$ s **DPE, EPF, FPG** is equal to half a right angle. **DEFG** cuts them such that **PD = PG**. Prove that  $DG:FG = FG:EF$ .

29. **GH** is a chord of a circle, **K** and **D** points on the two arcs respectively; **KH** and **KD** are joined and **GD** meets **KH** produced at **E**; **EF**  $\parallel$  to **GH** meets **KD** produced. Show that **EF** is equal to the tangent from **F**.

30. **DEF, DEG** are two circles, the centre **P** of **DEG** being on the circumference of **DEF**. A st. line **PHGF** cuts the common chord at **H**. Prove that  $PH:PG = PG:PF$ .

31. **EF** is the diameter of a circle. **PQ** is a chord  $\perp$  to **EF**, a chord **QXR** cuts **EF** at **X**, and **PR, EF** produced meet at **Y**. Show that  $EX:EY = FX:FY$ .

32. **O** is a fixed point and **P** a variable point on the circumference of a circle; **PO** is produced to **Q** such that  $OQ:OP = m:n$ . Find the locus of **Q**.

33. **LMN** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle,  $\angle L$  is bisected by **LED** cutting **MN** at **E** and the arc at **D**. Prove  $\triangle s$  **LEN** and **LMD** similar.

34. The  $\angle D$  of the  $\triangle DEF$  is bisected by **DP** cutting **EF** in **P**; **QPR** is  $\perp$  to **DP** meeting **DE** and **DF** at **Q** and **R**; **RS** is  $\parallel$  to **EF** meeting **DE** at **S**. Prove  $SE = EQ$ .

35. **AOB**, **COD** and **EOF** are any three st. lines; **ACE** is  $\parallel$  to **FDB**. Prove  $AC:CE = BD:DF$ . State and prove a converse to this theorem.

36. Two circles **DEF** and **DEG** intersect; a tangent **DF** is drawn to **DEG**, and **EG** to **DEF**. Show that **DE** is a mean proportional between **FE** and **DG**.

37. **EFGH** is a quadrilateral, the diagonals **EG** and **FH** meet at **Q**. Prove  $\triangle EFH:\triangle FGH = EQ:QG$ .

38. **EFGH** is a quadrilateral of which the sides **EH** and **FG** produced meet at **P**. Prove  $\triangle EFG:\triangle FGH = EP:PH$ .

39. **G** is the middle point of the st. line **MN**, **PE** a st. line  $\parallel$  to **MN**. Any st. line **EFGH** cuts **PN** at **F** and **PM** produced at **H**. Prove  $EF:FG = EH:HG$ .

40. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  having  $\angle B = \angle C$  = twice  $\angle A$ , **BD** bisects the  $\angle B$  meeting **AC** at **D**. Prove  $AC:AD = AD:DC$ ; also prove  $\triangle ABC:\triangle ABD = \triangle ABD:\triangle BDC$ .

41. **EFGH** is a cyclic quadrilateral, **EG** and **FH** intersect at **O**, and **OP** and **OQ** are  $\perp$ s to **EH** and **FG**. Show that  $OP:OQ = EH:FG$ .

42. **EF** is the diameter of a circle and **P** and **Q** any points on the circumference on opposite sides of **EF**; **QR** is  $\perp$  to **EF** meeting **EP** at **S**. Prove  $\triangle ESQ \sim \triangle EQP$ .

43. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle, centre **O**, **AD** a  $\perp$  to **BC**, **AOE** a diameter. Prove  $\triangle$ s **ADC** and **ABE** similar : and  $AD \cdot AE = AB \cdot AC$ .

44. **EFG** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle, **ED**  $\parallel$  to the tangent at **G** meets the base at **D**. Prove that  $FG : FE = EG : ED$ .

45. Find the ratio of the segments of the hypotenuse of a right- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  made by a perpendicular on it from the vertex, if the ratio of the sides be (1)  $1 : 2$ ; (2)  $m : n$ .

46. **PQ** is the diameter of a circle ; a tangent is drawn from a point **R** on the circumference, **PS** and **QT** are  $\perp$  to the tangent. Prove  $\triangle$ s **PRQ**, **RPS** and **RTQ** similar ; also show that  $\triangle$  **PRQ** is half of **PSTQ**.

47. **PQ** and **PR** are tangents to a circle, **PST** is a secant meeting the circle at **S** and **T**. Prove  $QT : QS = RT : RS$ .

48. Two circles intersect at **E** and **F**; from **P**, any point on one of them, chords **PED**, **PFG** are drawn, **EF** and **DG** meet at **Q** and **PQ** cuts the circle **PEF** at **R**. Prove **R**, **F**, **G**, **Q** concyclic ; also that  $PQ^2$  is equal to the sum of the squares on the tangents to the circle **EGFD** from **P** and **Q**.

49. **PBR** is a st. line, and similar segments of circles, **PAB** and **BAR**, are described on **PB** and **BR** and on the same side of **PR**. **PAC** and **RAD** are drawn to meet the circles at **C** and **D**. Prove  $PD : RC = PB : BR$ .

**NOTE.**—*Segments of circles are said to be similar when they contain equal angles.*

50. **PMQ** is the diameter of a circle **PRQ**, **PX** and **QY** are  $\parallel$  tangents, **XRY** is any other tangent, **PY** and **XQ** meet at **O**. Show that **RO** is  $\parallel$  to **PX**; that **RO** produced to **M** is  $\perp$  to the diameter ; and that **MO = OR**.

51. **ABCD** is a rectangle, a st. line **APQR** is drawn cutting **BC** at **P**, the circle circumscribing the rectangle at **Q** and **DC** produced at **R**, and such that **AC** bisects  $\angle$  **DAR**. Prove  $DC : CR = PQ : PA$ .

52. **PQRS** is a square. A st. line **PFED** cuts **QS** at **F**, **SR** at **E** and **QR** produced at **D**. Prove **FR** a tangent to the circle described about **DER**; also that  $\mathbf{EF} : \mathbf{PF} = \mathbf{PF} : \mathbf{FD}$ .

53. **FGHK** is a cyclic quadrilateral, the  $\angle GFE$  is made equal to  $\angle HFK$  and **E** is in **GK**. Prove  $\triangle$ s **FEK** and **FGH** similar.

54. **PA** and **PB** are tangents to a circle, centre **O**, **AB** meets **PO** in **R**; **PCD** is any secant, **OS** is  $\perp$  to **PD**, and **AB** and **OS** produced meet at **Q**. Prove (1) **P, R, S, Q** concyclic; (2)  $\mathbf{PO} \cdot \mathbf{OR} = \mathbf{OA}^2$ ; (3) **QD** and **QC** are tangents to the given circle.

55. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$  and **P** and **Q** are points in **ED** and **FE** such that  $\mathbf{EP} : \mathbf{PD} = \mathbf{FQ} : \mathbf{QE}$ , and **PQ** meets **DF** produced at **R**. Prove  $\mathbf{RF} : \mathbf{RD} = \mathbf{PE}^2 : \mathbf{PD}^2$ . (*Through F draw a st. line  $\parallel$  to DE to meet PR.*)

56. If a square is inscribed in a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  having one side on the hypotenuse, show that the three segments of the base are in continued proportion.

57. **FGH** is a  $\triangle$  and  $\angle G$  and  $\angle H$  are bisected by st. lines which cut the opposite sides at **D** and **E**; if **DE** is  $\parallel$  to **GH**, then **FG** = **FH**.

58. From **P**, the middle point of an arc of a circle cut off by a chord **QR**, any chord **PDE** is drawn cutting **QR** at **D**. Show that  $\mathbf{PQ}^2 = \mathbf{PD} \cdot \mathbf{PE}$ .

59. Draw a st. line through a given point so that the perpendiculars on it from two other given points may be (1) equal, (2) one twice the other, (3) three times the other, (4) in a given ratio.

60. **LMN** is an isosceles  $\triangle$ , the base **MN** is produced both ways, in **NM** produced any point **P** is taken, and in **MN** produced **NQ** is taken a third proportional to **PM** and **LM**. Prove  $\triangle$ s **PLQ** and **PLM** similar.

61. **EDOF** is the diameter of a circle, centre **O**. **PE** and **PG** are tangents to the circle; **GD** is  $\perp$  to **EF**. Prove  $GD : DE = OE : EP$ .

62. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle, centre **O**. The diameter  $\perp$  to **EF** cuts **DE** at **P** and **FD** produced at **Q**. Prove  $\triangle$ s **EPO** and **FOQ** similar; and hence  $OE^2 = OP \cdot OQ$ .

63. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle. The exterior  $\perp$  at **A** is bisected by a st. line cutting **BC** produced at **D** and the circumference at **E**. Prove  $BA \cdot AC = EA \cdot AD$ .

64. **FGH** is a cyclic quadrilateral, **P** a point on the circumference, **PQ**, **PR**, **PS**, **PT** are  $\perp$  to **EF**, **FG**, **GH**, **HE** respectively. Prove  $\triangle$ s **PTQ** and **PSR** similar; and  $PT \cdot PR = PS \cdot PQ$ .

65. Any three  $\parallel$  chords **AB**, **CD**, **EF** are drawn in a circle, **AC** and **BD** meet **EF** produced at **Q** and **R**, **P** is a point in the arc **EF**, and **PA** and **PD** meet **EF** at **M** and **N**. Prove  $\triangle$ s **AQM** and **NDR** similar; hence show that, for all positions of **P**, **QM**.**NR** is constant.

66. Two tangents **TM** and **TNQ** are drawn to a circle, centre **O**; and the st. line **POQ** is  $\perp$  to **TO**. **MN** is any other tangent to the circle. Prove  $\triangle$ s **MPO** and **NQO** similar.

67. **DH** is a median of the  $\triangle$  **DEF**, **PQ** is  $\parallel$  to **EF** cutting **DE** at **P** and **DF** at **Q**. Show that **PF** and **EQ** intersect on **DH**.

68. **LNM** is a  $\triangle$  inscribed in a semicircle, diameter **LM**. **NM** is greater than **NL**. On opposite sides of **LN** the  $\angle LNP$  is made equal to  $\angle LNQ$ , **P** and **Q** lying along **LM**. Prove  $PL : LQ = PM : QM$ .

69. **EFGH** is a  $\parallel$ gm, and **RS** is drawn  $\parallel$  to **HF** meeting **EH** and **EF** at **R** and **S**. Show that **RG** and **SG** cut off equal segments of the diagonal **FH**. Prove a converse of this.

70. **ABC** is a  $\triangle$  and **AB**, **AC** are produced to **D**, **E** so that  $BD = CE$ ; **DE** and **BC** produced meet at **F**. Show that  $AD : AE = FC : FB$ .

71. Two circles, centres **O**, **P** intersect, the centre **O** being on the circumference of the other circle. **GDE** touches the circle with centre **O** at **G** and cuts the other at **D**, **E**, and **EPF** is a diameter. Prove  $\triangle OGD \sim \triangle OEF$ ; and hence, that  $OD \cdot OE$  is constant for all positions of the tangent.

72. Two circles touch externally at **P**; **EF** a chord of one circle touches the other at **D**. Prove  $PE : PF = ED : DF$ .

73. **EOF** is the diameter of a circle, with centre **O**, **DP** any chord cutting the diameter; **OSQR**  $\perp$  to **DP** meets **DP** at **S**, **DE** at **Q**, and **PE** at **R**. Prove  $\triangle s EDF$  and  $RSP$  similar; also  $OQ \cdot OR = OD^2$ .

74. Divide an arc of a circle into two parts so that the chords which cut them off shall have a given ratio to each other.

75. **LMN** is a  $\triangle$ , and **XY**  $\parallel$  **MN** meets **LM** at **X** and **LN** at **Y**; **MN** is produced to **D** so that  $ND = XY$ , and **XP**  $\parallel$  to **LD** meets **MN** at **P**. Prove  $MN : ND = ND : NP$ .

76. Two circles intersect and a st. line **CDOEF** cuts the circumferences at **C**, **D**, **E**, **F** and the common chord at **O**. Show that  $CD : DO = EF : OE$

77. **DX**  $\perp$  **EF** and **EY**  $\perp$  **DF** in  $\triangle DEF$ . The lines **DX**, **EY** cut at **O**. Prove that  $EX : XO = DX : XF$ .

78. From a point **P** without a circle two secants **PKL**, **PMN** are drawn to meet the circle in **K**, **L**, **M**, **N**. The bi-sector of  $\angle KPM$  meets the chord **KM** at **E** and the chord **LN** at **F**. Prove that  $LF : FN = ME : EK$

79. **QR** is a chord  $\parallel$  to the tangent at **P** to a circle. A chord **PD** cuts **QR** at **E**. Prove that **PQ** is a mean proportional between **PE** and **PD**.

80. **DEF, DEG** are two fixed circles and **FEG** is a st. line. Show that the ratio **FD : DG** is constant for all positions of the st. line **FEG**.

81. **DEF** is a st. line, and **EG, FH** are any two  $\parallel$  st. lines on the same side of **DEF** such that  $\text{EG} : \text{FH} = \text{DE} : \text{DF}$ . Prove that **D, G, H** are in a st. line.

82. From a given point on the circumference of a circle draw two chords which are in a given ratio and contain a given  $\angle$ .

83. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$  and on **DE, DF** two  $\triangle$ s **DLE, DFM** are described externally such that  $\angle FDM = \angle EDL$  and  $\angle DFM = \angle DLE$ . Prove  $\triangle DLF \sim \triangle DEM$ .

84. **DEFG** is a  $\parallel$ gm and **P** is any point in the diagonal **EG**. The st. line **KPL** meets **DE** at **K** and **FG** at **L**, and **MPN** meets **EF** at **M** and **GD** at **N**. Prove **KM || NL**.

85. **ABCD** is a  $\parallel$ gm and **PQ** is a st. line  $\parallel$  **AB**. The st. lines **PA, QB** meet at **R** and **PD, QC** meet at **S**. Prove **RS || AD**.

86. If the three sides of one  $\triangle$  are respectively  $\perp$  to the three sides of another  $\triangle$ , the two  $\triangle$ s are similar.

87. Find a point whose  $\perp$  distances from the three sides of a  $\triangle$  are in the ratio  $1 : 2 : 3$ .

88. Squares are described each with one side on one given st. line and one vertex on another given st. line. Find the locus of the vertices which are on neither.

89. If the sides of a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  are in the ratio  $3 : 2$ , prove that the  $\perp$  from the vertex of the rt.  $\angle$  to the hypotenuse divides it in the ratio  $9 : 4$ .

90. **HK** is a diameter of a circle and **L** is any point on the circumference. A st. line  $\perp$  **HK** meets **HK** at **D**, **HL** at **E**, **KL** at **G**, and the circumference at **F**. Show that  $\text{DF}^2 = \text{DE} \cdot \text{DG}$ .

91. The st. line joining a fixed point to any point on the circumference of a given circle is divided in a given ratio at **P**. Prove that the locus of **P** is a circle.

92. **DEFG** is a quadrilateral and **P, Q, R, S** are points on **DE, EF, FG, GD** such that  $DP : DE = FQ : FE = FR : FG = DS : DG$ . Prove that **PQRS** is a ||gm.

93. **DEFG** is a ||gm, and a line is drawn from **E** cutting **DF** in **P**, **DG** in **Q** and **FG** produced in **R**. Prove that  $PQ : PR = DP^2 : PF^2$ ; and that  $PQ \cdot PR = EP^2$ .

94. If  $\triangle DEF : \triangle GHK = DE \cdot EF : GH \cdot HK$ , prove that  $\angle E, H$  are either equal or supplementary.

95. From a point **P** without a circle draw a secant **PQR**, such that **QR** is a mean proportional between **PQ** and **PR**.

96. Through a point of intersection of two circles draw a line such that the chords intercepted by the circles are in a given ratio.

97. If two  $\triangle$ s are on equal bases and between the same ||s, the intercepts made by the sides of the  $\triangle$ s on any st. line || to the base are equal.

98. The radius of a fixed circle is 38 mm., and a chord **LM** of the circle is divided at **P** such that  $LP \cdot PM = 225$  sq. mm. Construct the locus of **P**.

99. If the tangents from a given point to any number of intersecting circles are all equal, all the common chords of the circles pass through that point.

100. Circles are described passing through two fixed points ; find the locus of a point from which the tangents to all the circles are equal.

101. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$  having  $\angle E$  a rt.  $\angle$ . A circle is described with centre **D** and radius **DE**; from **F** a secant is drawn cutting the circle at **G, H**; and **EX** is drawn  $\perp DF$ . Show that **D, X, G, H** are concyclic.

102. **GD** is a chord drawn  $\parallel$  to the diameter **LM** of a circle. **LG, LD** cut the tangent at **M** at **E, F** respectively. Prove that  $LG \cdot GE + LD \cdot DF = LM^2$ .

103. **LM** is a diameter of a circle, and on the tangent at **L** equal distances **LP, PQ** are cut off. **MP, MQ** cut the circumference at **R, S** respectively. Prove that  $LR : RS = LM : MS$ .

104. **GH** drawn in the  $\triangle DEF$  meets **DE** in **G** and **DF** in **H**. From **D** any line **DLK** is drawn cutting **GH** in **L** and **EF** in **K**. From **L** the st. lines **LM, LN** are drawn  $\parallel$  **KH, KG** and meeting **DH, DG** at **M, N** respectively. Prove  $\triangle LMN \sim \triangle KHG$ .

105. In a given  $\triangle$  inscribe an equilateral  $\triangle$  so as to have one side  $\parallel$  to a side of the given  $\triangle$ .

106. In a given  $\triangle DEF$  draw a st. line **PQ**  $\parallel$  **ED** meeting **EF** in **P** and **DF** in **Q**, so that **PQ** is a mean proportional between **EP** and **PF**.

107. Two circles intersect at **E, F**, and **DEG** is the st. line  $\perp$  **EF** and terminated in the circumferences. **HEK** is any other st. line through **E** terminated in the circumferences. **HF, DF, KF, GF** are drawn. Prove, by similar  $\triangle$ s, that  $DG > HK$ .

108. In  $\triangle ABC$  the bisectors of  $\angle A$  and of the exterior  $\angle$  at **A** meet the st. line **BC** at **D** and **E**. Show that  $DE = \frac{2abc}{c^2 - b^2}$ .

109. If two circles intercept equal chords **PQ, RS** on any st. line, the tangents **PT, RT** to the circles at **P, R** are to one another as the diameters of the circles.

110. **DEF** is a  $\triangle$  having  $DF > DE$ . From **DF** a part **DG** is cut off equal to **DE**, and **GH** is drawn  $\parallel$  **DE** to meet

**EF** at **H**. From **GF** a part **GK** is cut off equal to **GH**, and **KL** is drawn  $\parallel$  **GH** to meet **EF** at **L**; etc. Prove that **DE**, **GH**, **KL**, etc., are in continued proportion.

111. A circle **P** touches a circle **Q** internally, and also touches two  $\parallel$  chords of **Q**. Prove that the  $\perp$  from the centre of **P** on the diameter of **Q** which bisects the chords is a mean proportional between the two extremes of the three segments into which the diameter is divided by the chords.

112. **PX** is the  $\perp$  from a point **P** on the circumference of a circle to a chord **QR**, and **QY**, **RZ** are  $\perp$ s to the tangent at **P**. Prove that  $PX^2 = QY \cdot RZ$ .

113. Prove, by using 112, that if  $\perp$ s are drawn to the sides and diagonals of a cyclic quadrilateral from a point on the circumference of the circumscribed circle, the rectangle contained by the  $\perp$ s on the diagonals is equal to the rectangle contained by the  $\perp$ s on either pair of opposite sides.

114. The projections of two  $\parallel$  st. lines on a given st. line are proportional to the st. lines.

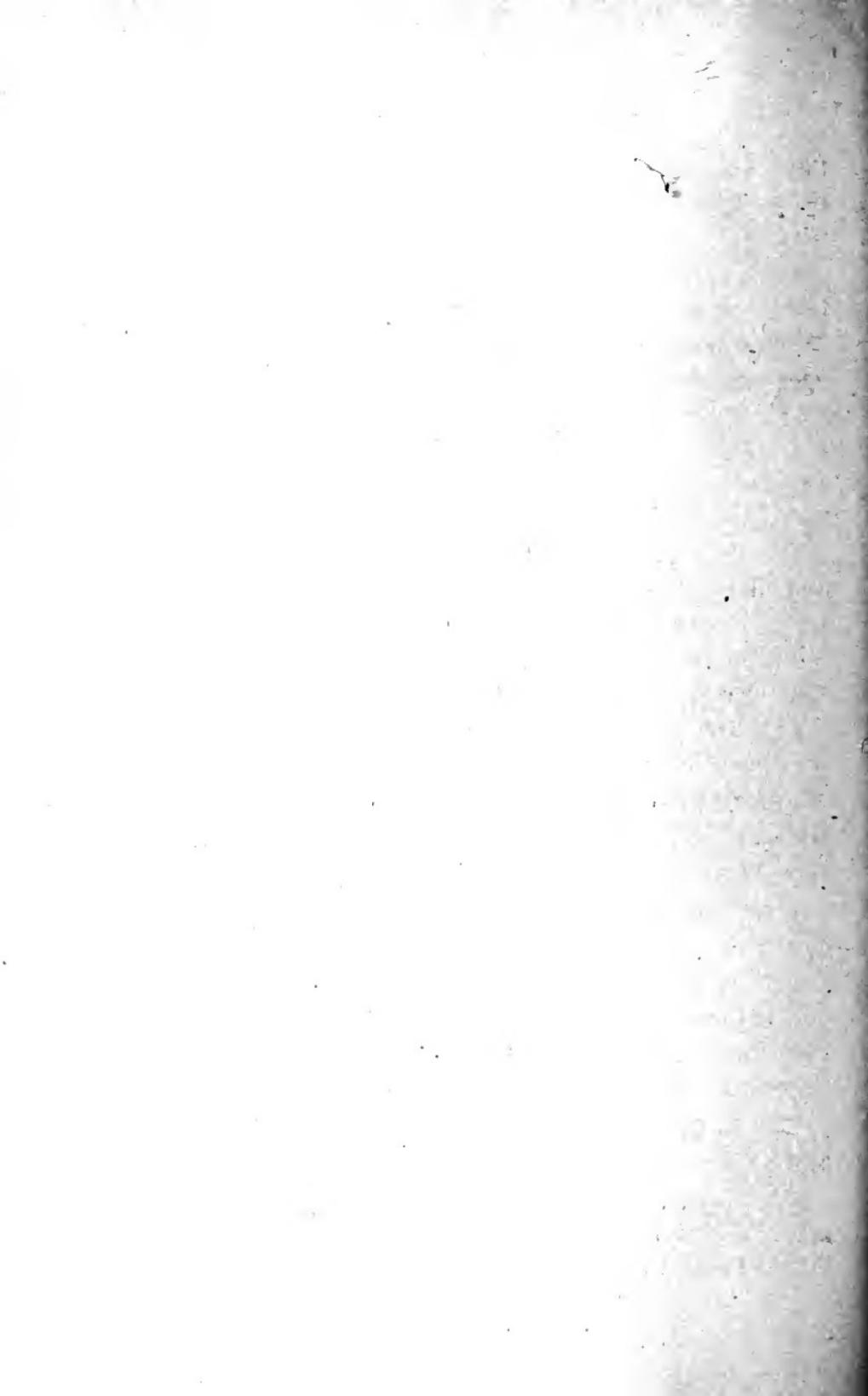
115. **DEFG** is a square, and **P** is a point in **GF** such that  $DP = FP + FE$ . Prove that the st. line from **D** to the middle point of **EF** bisects  $\angle PDE$ .

116. **DEF**, **GEF** are  $\triangle$ s on opposite sides of **EF**, and **DG** cuts **EF** at **H**. Prove that  $\triangle DEF : \triangle GEF = DH : HG$ .

117. From the intersection of the diagonals of a cyclic quadrilateral  $\perp$ s are drawn to a pair of opposite sides: prove that these  $\perp$ s are in the same ratio as the sides to which they are drawn.

118. **P**, **Q**, **R**, **S** are points in a st. line, **PX**  $\parallel$  **QY**, **RX**  $\parallel$  **SY**, and **XY** meets **PS** at **O**. Prove that  $OP \cdot OS = OQ \cdot OR$ .

119. From a point **T** without a circle tangents **TP**, **TQ** and a secant **TRS** are drawn. Prove that in the quadrilateral **PRQS** the rect. **PR.QS** = the rect. **RQ.SP**.

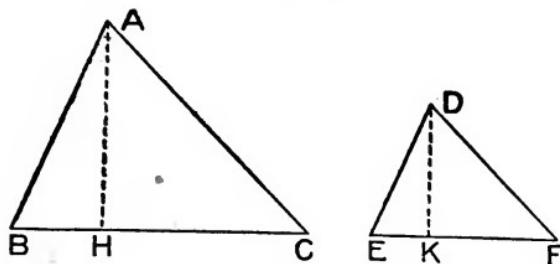


## BOOK V

### AREAS OF SIMILAR FIGURES

#### THEOREM 1

**The areas of similar triangles are proportional to the squares on corresponding sides.**



*Hypothesis.*—ABC, DEF are similar  $\triangle$ s of which BC, EF are corresponding sides.

*To prove that*  $\frac{\triangle ABC}{\triangle DEF} = \frac{BC^2}{EF^2}$

*Construction.*—Draw AH  $\perp$  BC and DK  $\perp$  EF.

*Proof.*—  $\because \triangle AHC \sim \triangle DKF$ ,

And  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$ ,

$$\therefore \frac{AH}{DK} = \frac{AC}{DF} = \frac{BC}{EF}. \quad (\text{IV--8, p. 236.})$$

$$\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} AH \cdot BC, \quad (\text{II--4, p. 100.})$$

$$\triangle DEF = \frac{1}{2} DK \cdot EF,$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \frac{\triangle ABC}{\triangle DEF} &= \frac{\frac{1}{2} AH \cdot BC}{\frac{1}{2} DK \cdot EF} \\ &= \frac{AH \cdot BC}{DK \cdot EF} \\ &= \frac{BC}{EF} \cdot \frac{BC}{EF} \\ &= \frac{BC^2}{EF^2}.\end{aligned}$$

## 130.—Exercises

1. Two similar  $\triangle$ s have corresponding sides in the ratio of 3 to 5. What is the ratio of their areas?
2. The ratio of the areas of two similar  $\triangle$ s equals the ratio of 64 to 169. What is the ratio of their corresponding sides?
3. Draw a  $\triangle$  having sides 4 cm., 5 cm., 6 cm. Make a second  $\triangle$  having its area four times that of the first, and divide it into parts each equal and similar to the first  $\triangle$ .
4. Show that the areas of similar  $\triangle$ s are as:—
  - (a) the squares on corresponding altitudes;
  - (b) the squares on corresponding medians;
  - (c) the squares on the bisectors of corresponding  $\angle$ s.

5.  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\triangle DEF$  are two similar  $\triangle$ s such that area of  $\triangle DEF$  is twice that of  $\triangle ABC$ . What is the ratio of corresponding sides?

Draw  $\triangle ABC$  having sides 5 cm., 6 cm., 7 cm., and make  $\triangle DEF$  similar to  $\triangle ABC$ , and of double the area.

- ✓ 6. If  $\triangle ABC$ ,  $\triangle DEF$  be similar  $\triangle$ s of which  $BC$ ,  $EF$  are corresponding sides, and the st. line  $G$  be such that  $BC : EF = EF : G$ , then  $\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF = BC : G$ ; that is:—

If three st. lines be in continued proportion, the first is to the third as any  $\triangle$  on the first is to the similar  $\triangle$  similarly described on the second.

*NOTE.—Similar  $\triangle$ s are said to be similarly described on corresponding sides.*

7.  $\triangle ABC$  is a  $\triangle$  and  $G$  is a st. line. Describe a  $\triangle DEF$  similar to  $\triangle ABC$  and such that  $\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF = BC : G$ .

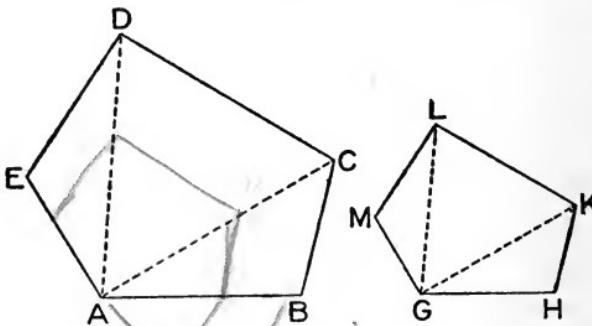
Describe another  $\triangle HKL$  similar to  $\triangle ABC$  and such that  $\triangle ABC : \triangle HKL = AB : G$ .

8. Bisect a given  $\triangle$  by a st. line drawn  $\parallel$  to one of its sides.
9. From a given  $\triangle$  cut off a part equal to one-third of its area by a st. line drawn  $\parallel$  to one of its sides.
10. Trisect a given  $\triangle$  by st. lines drawn  $\parallel$  to one of its sides.
11. Show that the equilateral  $\triangle$  described on the hypotenuse of a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  equals the sum of the equilateral  $\triangle$ s on the two sides.
12. In  $\triangle DEF$ ,  $DX \perp EF$  and  $EY \perp FD$ . Prove that  $\triangle FXY : \triangle DEF = FX^2 : FD^2$ .
13. In the acute- $\angle$ d  $\triangle DEF$ ,  $DX \perp EF$ ,  $EY \perp FD$ ,  $FZ \perp DE$ ,  $YG \perp EF$  and  $ZH \perp EF$ . Prove that  $XY$  and  $XZ$  divide the  $\triangle DEF$  into three parts that are proportional to  $FG$ ,  $GH$  and  $HE$ .
14.  $LMN$  is an equilateral  $\triangle$ . The st. lines  $RLQ$ ,  $PMR$ ,  $QNP$  are respectively  $\perp LM$ ,  $MN$ ,  $NL$ . Find the ratio of  $\triangle PQR$  to  $\triangle LMN$ .
15. A point  $O$  is taken in the diameter  $PQ$  produced of a circle.  $OT$  is a tangent, and the tangent at  $P$  cuts  $OT$  at  $N$ . If  $D$  is the centre of the circle, prove that  $\triangle OPN : \triangle OTD = OP : OQ$ .
16.  $H$  is a point on the circumference of a circle of which  $FG$  is a diameter, and  $O$  is the centre.  $HD \perp FG$ , and tangents at  $F$  and  $H$  meet at  $E$ . Prove that  $\triangle FEH : \triangle OHG = FD : DG$ .
17.  $DEF$ ,  $LMN$  are two  $\triangle$ s in which  $\angle E = \angle M$ . Prove that  $\triangle DEF : \triangle LMN = DE \cdot EF : LM \cdot MN$ .
18. Similar  $\triangle$ s are to one another as the squares on the radii of their circumscribing circles.
-

131. **Definition.**—If two polygons of the same number of sides have the angles of one taken in order around the figure respectively equal to the angles of the other in order, and have also the corresponding sides in proportion, the polygons are said to be similar polygons.

### PROBLEM 1

To describe a polygon similar to a given polygon, and with the corresponding sides in a given ratio.



Let **ABCDE** be the given polygon, and **GH** a st. line taken such that **AB** is to **GH** in the given ratio.

It is required to describe on **GH** a polygon similar to **ABCDE** and such that **AB** and **GH** are corresponding sides.

Join **AC**, **AD**.

Make  $\angle H = \angle B$ ,  $\angle HGK = \angle BAC$  and produce the arms to meet at **K**. Make  $\angle KGL = \angle CAD$ ,  $\angle GKL = \angle ACD$ , and produce the arms to meet at **L**. Make  $\angle LGM = \angle DAE$ ,  $\angle GLM = \angle ADE$  and produce the arms to meet at **M**.

**GHKLM** is the required polygon.

$$\angle H = \angle B, \angle HGK = \angle BAC, \therefore \angle HKG = \angle BCA.$$

Similarly  $\angle GLK = \angle ADC$ , and  $\angle M = \angle E$ .

Hence  $\angle HKL = \angle BCD$ ,  $\angle KLM = \angle CDE$  and  $\angle HGM = \angle BAE$ .

$\therefore$  polygon GHKLM has its  $\angle$ s equal respectively to the  $\angle$ s of polygon ABCDE.

From the similar  $\triangle$ s GHK, ABC,  $\frac{GH}{AB} = \frac{HK}{BC} = \frac{KG}{CA}$  ;  
and from the similar  $\triangle$ s GKL, ACD,  $\frac{KG}{CA} = \frac{KL}{CD}$  ;

$$\therefore \frac{GH}{AB} = \frac{HK}{BC} = \frac{KL}{CD}.$$

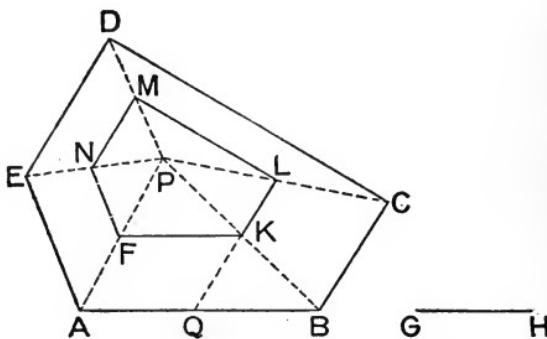
In the same manner it may be shown that each of these ratios equals  $\frac{LM}{DE}$  and  $\therefore$  equals  $\frac{MG}{EA}$ .

Hence the corresponding sides of the two polygons are proportional;  $\therefore$  polygon GHKLM is similar to polygon ABCDE; and the two polygons have their corresponding sides in the given ratio.

### 132.—Exercises

1. Draw diagrams to show that two quadrilaterals may have the sides of one respectively proportional to the sides of the other, but the  $\angle$ s of one not equal to the corresponding  $\angle$ s of the other.
2. Draw diagrams to show that two quadrilaterals may have the  $\angle$ s of one respectively equal to the  $\angle$ s of the other, but the corresponding sides not in the same proportion.
3. KLMN is a polygon. Construct a polygon similar to KLMN, and having each side one-third of the corresponding side of KLMN.

4. **ABCDE** is a given polygon and **GH** a given st. line. Cut off  $AQ = GH$ . Take any point **P** within **ABCDE**.



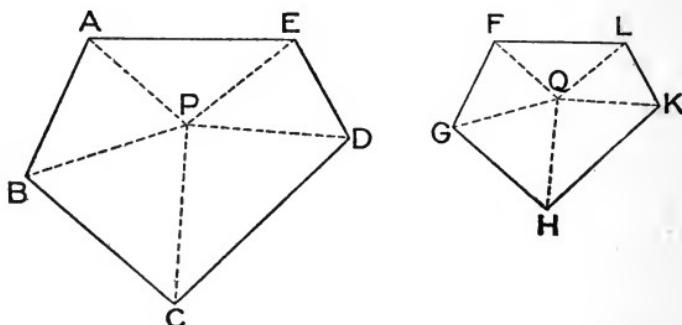
Join **P** to **A, B, C, D, E**. Draw  $QK \parallel AP$ ,  $KF \parallel AB$ ,  $FN \parallel AE$ ,  $NM \parallel ED$ ,  $KL \parallel BC$ . Join **LM**.

Show that **FKLMN** is similar to **ABCDE**.

5. Twice as many polygons may be described on a given st. line **GH**, each similar to a given polygon, as the given polygon has sides.

### PROBLEM 2

To divide similar polygons into similar triangles.



Let **ABCDE**, **FGHKL** be similar polygons of which **AB** and **FG** are corresponding sides.

It is required to divide **ABCDE**, and **FGHKL** into similar  $\triangle$ s.

Take any point **P** within the polygon **ABCDE**. Join **PA, PB, PC, PD, PE**.

Make  $\angle GFQ = \angle BAP$  and  $\angle FGQ = \angle ABP$ , and let the arms of these  $\angle$ s meet at **Q**.

Join **QH, QK, QL**.

$\angle PAB = \angle QFG$  and  $\angle PBA = \angle QGF$ ;  $\therefore \angle FQG = \angle APB$ , and consequently  $\triangle$ s **ABP, FGQ** are similar;

$$\therefore \frac{QG}{PB} = \frac{FG}{AB}.$$

But, by definition of similar polygons,

$$\frac{FG}{AB} = \frac{GH}{BC}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{QG}{PB} = \frac{GH}{BC}.$$

Also  $\angle FGH = \angle ABC$  and  $\angle FGQ = \angle ABP$ ;

$$\therefore \angle QGH = \angle PBC.$$

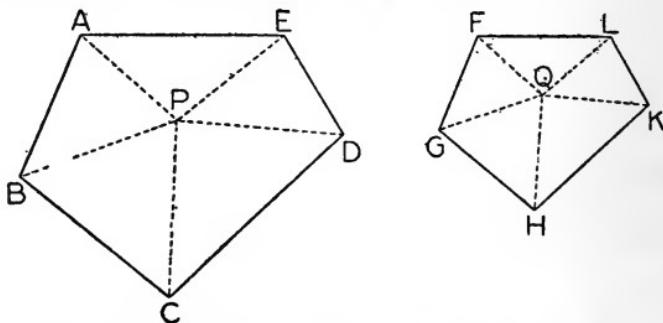
Then in  $\triangle$ s **QGH, PBC**,  $\frac{QG}{PB} = \frac{GH}{BC}$ , and  $\angle QGH = \angle PBC$ .

$\therefore$  these  $\triangle$ s are similar. (IV--10, p. 241.)

In the same manner it may be shown that the remaining pairs of corresponding  $\triangle$ s are similar.

## THEOREM 2

The areas of similar polygons are proportional to the squares on corresponding sides.



Using the diagram and construction of Problem 2.

It is required to show that  $\frac{\text{polygon } FGHKL}{\text{polygon } ABCDE} = \frac{FG^2}{AB^2}$ .

$\therefore \triangle s FGQ, ABP$  are similar,

$$\therefore \frac{\triangle FGQ}{\triangle ABP} = \frac{GQ^2}{BP^2}. \quad (\text{V}-1, \text{ p. 271.})$$

Similarly  $\frac{\triangle QGH}{\triangle PBC} = \frac{GQ^2}{BP^2}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{\triangle QGF}{\triangle PAB} = \frac{\triangle QGH}{\triangle PBC} = (\text{in the same manner})$$

$$\frac{\triangle QHK}{\triangle PCD} = \frac{\triangle QKL}{\triangle PDE} = \frac{\triangle QLF}{\triangle PEA}.$$

But, if any number of fractions be equal to each other, the sum of their numerators divided by the sum of their denominators equals each of the fractions.

Now the sum of the numerators of the equal fractions is the polygon FGHKL, and the sum of the denominators is the polygon ABCDE;

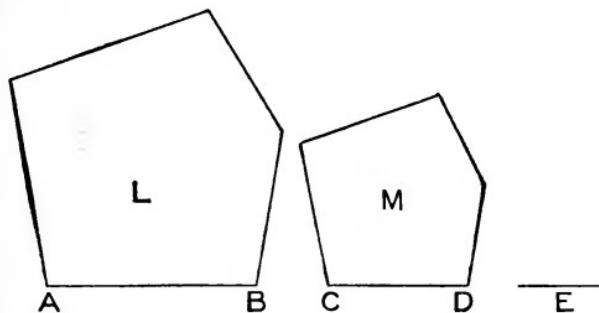
$$\therefore \frac{\text{polygon } FGHKL}{\text{polygon } ABCDE} = \frac{\triangle QFG}{\triangle PAB}.$$

$$\text{But } \frac{\triangle QFG}{\triangle PAB} = \frac{FG^2}{AB^2}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{\text{polygon } FGHKL}{\text{polygon } ABCDE} = \frac{FG^2}{AB^2}.$$

## THEOREM 3

If three straight lines are in continued proportion, the first is to the third as any polygon on the first is to the similar and similarly described polygon on the second.



*Hypothesis.*— $AB, CD, E$  are three st. lines such that  $AB : CD = CD : E$ , and  $L, M$ , similar polygons having  $AB, CD$  corresponding sides.

*To prove that polygon L : polygon M = AB : E.*

$$\text{Proof.}— \frac{\text{Polygon } L}{\text{Polygon } M} = \frac{AB^2}{CD^2} \quad (\text{V—2, p. 278.})$$

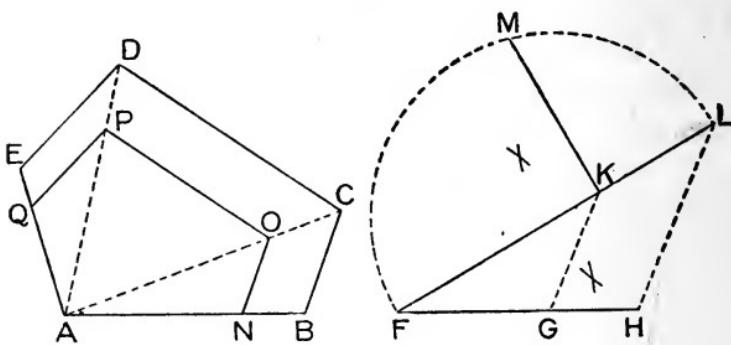
$$= \frac{AB}{CD} \cdot \frac{AB}{CD}$$

$$= \frac{AB}{CD} \cdot \frac{CD}{E} \quad (\text{Hyp.})$$

$$= \frac{AB}{E}.$$

## PROBLEM 3

To make a polygon similar to a given polygon and such that their areas are in a given ratio.



Let **ABCDE** be the given polygon and **FG**, **GH** two given st. lines.

It is required to make a polygon similar to **ABCDE**, and such that its area is to that of **ABCDE** as **GH** is to **FG**.

*Construction.*—Find **KL** a fourth proportional to **FG**, **GH**, **AB**. (IV—Prob. 2, p. 227.)

Find **KM** a mean proportional to **FK**, **KL**. (IV—Prob. 5, p. 246.)

Cut off **AN = KM**, and on **AN** construct a polygon **ANOPQ** similar to **ABCDE**.

*Proof.*—

$$\therefore \frac{AB}{AN} = \frac{AN}{KL},$$

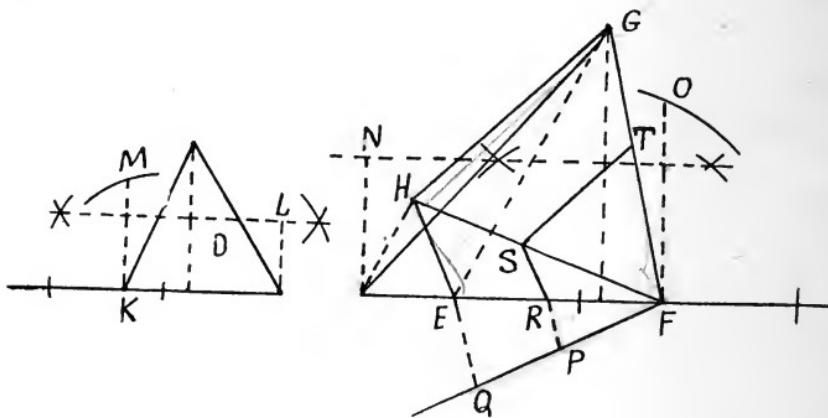
$$\therefore \frac{\text{polygon } ABCDE}{\text{polygon } ANOPQ} = \frac{AB}{KL} \quad (\text{V--3, p. 279.})$$

$$= \frac{FG}{GH}.$$

And     $\therefore \frac{\text{polygon } ANOPQ}{\text{polygon } ABCDE} = \frac{GH}{FG}.$

## PROBLEM 4

To make a figure equal to one given rectilineal figure and similar to another.



Let  $\Delta D$  and  $EFGH$  be the given figures.

It is required to make a figure similar to  $EFGH$  and equal to  $\Delta D$ .

*Construction.*—Construct the rect.  $KL = \Delta D$ , and the rect.  $FN = EFGH$ .

Make  $KM$  the side of a square which is equal to  $KL$ , and  $FO$  the side of a square which is equal to  $FN$ ; so that,  $KM^2 = \Delta D$  and  $FO^2 = EFGH$ .

From  $F$  draw a st. line  $FQ$  and from it cut off  $FP = KM$  and  $FQ = FO$ .

Join  $QE$ , and draw  $PR \parallel QE$  cutting  $EF$  at  $R$ .

On  $RF$  describe  $RFTS$  similar to  $EFGH$ .

$RFTS$  is the required figure.

*Proof.*—

$$\therefore \text{RFTS} \parallel\!\!\!|| \text{ EFGH},$$

$$\therefore \frac{\text{RFTS}}{\text{EFGH}} = \frac{\text{RF}^2}{\text{EF}^2}. \quad (\text{V}-1, \text{p. } 271.)$$

$$= \frac{\text{PF}^2}{\text{QF}^2} \quad (\text{IV}-2, \text{p. } 222.)$$

$$= \frac{\text{KM}^2}{\text{FO}^2} = \frac{\text{D}}{\text{EFGH}}.$$

$$\therefore \frac{\text{RFTS}}{\text{EFGH}} = \frac{\text{D}}{\text{EFGH}};$$

and  $\therefore \text{RFTS} = \text{D}$ ;

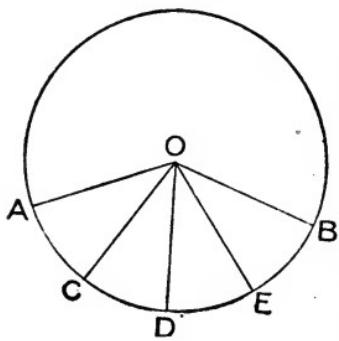
also **RFTS** was made similar to **EFGH**.

### 133.—Exercises

1. On a plan of which the scale is 1 inch to 2 feet, a room is represented by 30 sq. in. Find the area of the room.
  2. On a map of which the scale is 4 inches to the mile, a farm is represented by 10 sq. in. Find the number of acres in the farm.
  3. Construct an equilateral  $\triangle$  equal in area to a given square.
  4. Construct a square equal in area to a given  $\triangle$ .
  5. Construct a rectangle similar to a given rectangle and equal in area to a given square.
  6. Construct a square the area of which is 15 sq. in.
  7. Bisect a given  $\triangle$  by a st. line drawn  $\perp$  to one side.
-

## ARCS AND ANGLES

134.—Suppose an angle **AOB** at the centre of a circle to be divided into a number of equal parts **AOC, COD, DOE, EOB**.

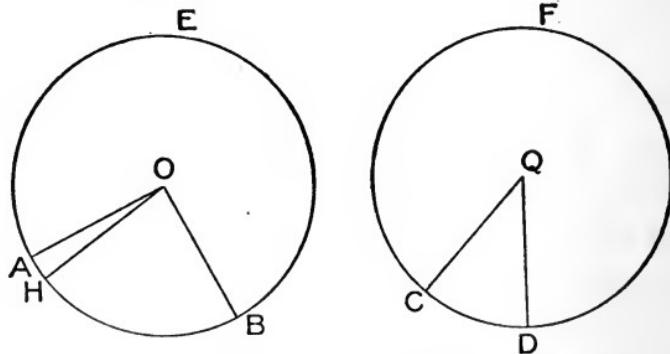


Then, by III—13, p. 167, the arcs **AC, CD, DE, EB** are equal to each other, and whatever multiple the angle **AOB** is of the angle **AOC**, the arc **AB** is the same multiple of the arc **AC**.

Thus, if an angle at the centre of a circle be divided into degrees and contain  $a$  of them, the arc subtending the angle will contain the arc subtending one degree  $a$  times.

## THEOREM 4

In equal circles, angles, whether at the centres or circumferences, are proportional to the arcs on which they stand.



*Hypothesis.*—In the equal circles **AEB, CFD**, the  $\angle$ s **AOB, CQD** at the centres stand respectively on the arcs **AB, CD**.

To prove that  $\frac{\angle AOB}{\angle CQD} = \frac{\text{arc AB}}{\text{arc CD}}$ .

*Proof.*—Let the  $\angle$ s **AOB**, **CQD** be commensurable having  $\angle AOH$  a common measure. Suppose  $\angle AOB$  contains  $\angle AOH$   $a$  times, and  $\angle CQD$  contains  $\angle AOH$   $b$  times.

Then arc **AB** contains arc **AH**  $a$  times, and arc **CD** contains arc **AH**  $b$  times.

$$\therefore \frac{\angle AOB}{\angle CQD} = \frac{a \times \angle AOH}{b \times \angle AOH} = \frac{a}{b}.$$

And  $\frac{\text{arc AB}}{\text{arc CD}} = \frac{a \times \text{arc AH}}{b \times \text{arc AH}} = \frac{a}{b}$ .

$$\therefore \frac{\angle AOB}{\angle CQD} = \frac{\text{arc AB}}{\text{arc CD}}.$$

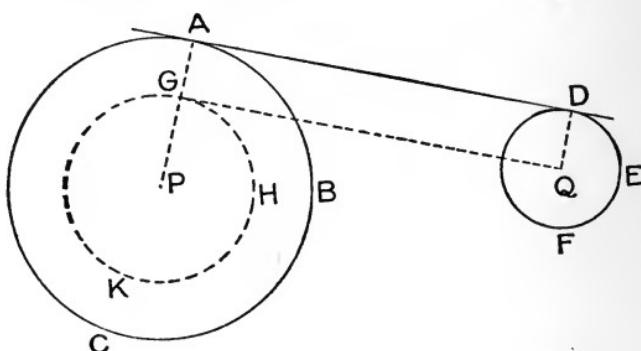
Again, since the  $\angle$ s at the circumferences are respectively half the  $\angle$ s at the centres, on the same arcs, the  $\angle$ s at the circumferences are also in the ratio of the arcs on which they stand.

---

### ANALYSIS OF A PROBLEM—COMMON TANGENTS OF CIRCLES

135. A common method of discovering the solution of a problem begins with the drawing of the given figure or figures. The required part is then sketched in, and a careful examination is made to determine the connection between the given parts and the required result. Properties of the figure are noted, and lines are drawn that may help in finding the solution. This method of attack is known as the **Analysis of the Problem**. Its use is illustrated in the following sections.

136. Problem.—To draw the direct common tangents to two given circles.



Let **ABC**, **DEF** be two circles, with centres **P**, **Q**.

It is required to draw a direct common tangent to the circles **ABC**, **DEF**.

Suppose **AD** to be a direct common tangent touching the circles at **A**, **D**.

Join **PA**, **QD**.

**PA**, **QD** are both  $\perp$  **AD**, and  $\therefore$  **PA**  $\parallel$  **QD**.

Cut off **AG** = **DQ**. Join **QG**.

**AG** is both = and  $\parallel$  **QD**,  $\therefore$  **AQ** is a  $\parallel$ gm, and as  $\angle$  **GAD** is a rt.  $\angle$ , **AQ** is a rect.

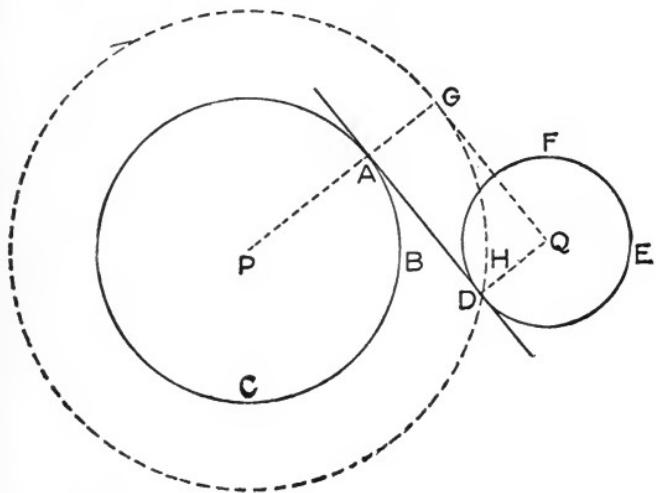
Draw a circle with centre **P** and radius **PG**.

**PGQ** is a rt.  $\angle$ ,  $\therefore$  **QG** is a tangent to the circle **GHK** and this tangent is drawn from the given point **Q**. The radius **PG** of the circle **GHK** is the difference of the radii of the given circles.

Using the construction suggested by the above analysis the pupil should make the direct drawing and prove that it is correct.

Show that two direct common tangents may be drawn.

137. Problem.—To draw the transverse common tangents to two given circles.



Let **ABC**, **DEF** be two circles with centres **P**, **Q**.

It is required to draw a transverse common tangent to the circles **ABC**, **DEF**.

Suppose **AD** to be a transverse common tangent touching the circles at **A**, **D**

Join **PA**, **QD**.

**PA**, **QD** are both  $\perp$  **AD**,  $\therefore$  **PA**  $\parallel$  **QD**.

Produce **PA** to **G** making **AG** = **DQ**. Join **QG**.

Then **AQ** is seen to be a rect., and if a circle be drawn with centre **P** and radius **PG**, **QG** is seen to be a tangent to this circle. The radius **PG** of the circle **GHK** is the sum of the radii of the given circles.

From this analysis the pupil can make the direct construction and give the proof.

Two transverse common tangents may be drawn to the given circles.

**138.—Exercises**

1. Draw diagrams to show that the number of common tangents to two circles may be 4, 3, 2, 1 or 0.
  2. Draw a st. line to cut two given circles so that the chords intercepted on the line may be equal respectively to two given st. lines.
  3.  $P$ ,  $Q$  are the centres of two circles. A common tangent (either direct or transversal) meets the line of centres at  $R$ . Show that the ratio  $PR:QR$  equals the ratio of the radii of the circles.
  4. The transverse common tangents and the line of centres of two circles are concurrent.
  5. The direct common tangents and the line of centres of two circles are concurrent.
  6.  $P$ ,  $Q$  are the centres of two circles and  $PA$ ,  $QB$  any two  $\parallel$  radii drawn in the same direction from  $P$ ,  $Q$ . Show that  $AB$  produced and the direct common tangents meet the line of centres at the same point.
  7.  $P$ ,  $Q$  are the centres of two circles and  $PA$ ,  $QB$  any two  $\parallel$  radii drawn in opposite directions from  $P$ ,  $Q$ . Show that  $AB$  and the transverse common tangents meet the line of centres at the same point.
  8. Draw the direct common tangents to two equal circles.
-

### Miscellaneous Exercises

1. Draw four circles each of radius  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches, touching a fixed circle of radius 1 inch and also touching a st. line  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches distant from the centre of the circle.
2. **DE, FG** are  $\parallel$  chords of the circle **DEGF**. Prove that  $DE \cdot FG = DG^2 - DF^2$ .
3. If two circles touch externally at **A** and are touched at **B, C** by a st. line, the st. line **BC** subtends a rt.  $\angle$  at **A**.
4. Of all  $\triangle$ s of given base and vertical  $\angle$ , the isosceles  $\triangle$  has the greatest area.
5. **ABC** is an equilateral  $\triangle$  inscribed in a circle, **P** is any point on the circumference. Of the three st. lines **PA, PB, PC**, shew that one equals the sum of the other two.
6. Construct a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$ , given the radius of the inscribed circle and an acute  $\angle$  of the  $\triangle$ .
7. The diagonals **AC, BD** of a cyclic quadrilateral **ABCD** cut at **E**. Show that the tangent at **E** to the circle circumscribed about  $\triangle ABE$  is  $\parallel$  to **CD**.
8. **A, B, C** are three points on a circle. The bisector of  $\angle ABC$  meets the circle again at **D**. **DE** is drawn  $\parallel$  to **AB** and meets the circle again at **E**. Show that **DE = BC**.
9. The side of an equilateral  $\triangle$  circumscribed about a circle is double the side of the equilateral  $\triangle$  inscribed in the same circle.
10. **AB** is the diameter of a circle and **CD** a chord. **EF** is the projection of **AB** on **CD**. Show that **CE = DF**.
11. Construct an isosceles  $\triangle$ , given the base and the radius of the inscribed circle.

12. Two circles touch externally. Find the locus of the points from which tangents drawn to the circles are equal to each other.
13. Two circles, centres **C**, **D**, intersect at **A**, **B**. **PAQ** is a st. line cutting the circles at **P**, **Q**. **PC**, **QD** intersect at **R**. Find the locus of **R**.
14. Two circles touch internally at **A**; **BC**, a chord of the outer circle, touches the inner circle at **D**. Show that **AD** bisects  $\angle BAC$ .
15. **P** is a given point on the circumference of a circle, of which **AB** is a given chord. Through **P** draw a chord **PQ** that is bisected by **AB**.
16. On a given base construct a  $\triangle$  having given the vertical  $\angle$  and the ratio of the two sides.
17. **AB** is a given st. line and **P**, **Q** are two points such that  $AP : PB = AQ : QB$ . Show that the bisectors of  $\angle s APB$ ,  $AQB$  cut **AB** at the same point.
18. **AB** is a given st. line and **P**, **Q** are two points such that  $AP : PB = AQ : QB$ . Show that the bisectors of the exterior  $\angle s$  at **P**, **Q** of the  $\triangle s$  **APB**, **AQB** meet **AB** produced at the same point.
19. **AB** is a given st. line and **P** is a point which moves so that the ratio  $AP : PB$  is constant. The bisectors of the interior and exterior  $\angle s$  at **P** of the  $\triangle APB$ , meet **AB** and **AB** produced at **C**, **D** respectively. Show that the locus of **P** is a circle on **CD** as diameter.
20. **AB** is a st. line 2 inches in length. **P** is a point such that **AP** is twice **BP**. Construct the locus of **P**.
21. Two circles touch externally, and **A**, **B** are the points of contact of a common tangent. Show that **AB** is a mean proportional between their diameters.

22. If on equal chords segments of circles be described containing equal  $\angle$ s, the circles are equal.
23. Construct a quadrilateral such that the bisectors of the opposite  $\angle$ s meet on the diagonals.
24. Draw a circle to pass through a given point and touch two given st. lines.
25. Draw a circle to touch a given circle and two given st. lines.
26. Draw a circle to pass through two given points and touch a given circle.
27. Construct a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  given the hypotenuse and the radius of the inscribed circle.
28. In  $\triangle ABC$  the inscribed circle touches **AB**, **AC** at **D**, **E** respectively. The line joining **A** to the centre cuts the circle at **F**. Show that **F** is the centre of the inscribed circle of  $\triangle ADE$ .
29. The inscribed circle of the rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle ABC$  touches the hypotenuse **BC** at **D**. Show that  $\text{rect. } BD \cdot DC = \triangle ABC$ .
30. If on the sides of any  $\triangle$  equilateral  $\triangle$ s be described outwardly, the centres of the circumscribed circles of the three equilateral  $\triangle$ s are the vertices of an equilateral  $\triangle$ .
31. Describe three circles to touch each other externally and a given circle internally.
32. Show that two circles can be described with the middle point of the hypotenuse of a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  as centre to touch the two circles described on the two sides as diameters.
33. A st. line **AB** of fixed length moves so as to be constantly  $\parallel$  to a given st. line and **A** to be on the circumference of a given circle. Show that the locus of **B** is an equal circle.

34. Construct an isosceles  $\triangle$  equal in area to a given  $\triangle$  and having the vertical  $\angle$  equal to one of the  $\angle$ s of the given  $\triangle$ .

35. If two chords  $AB$ ,  $AC$ , drawn from a point  $A$  in the circumference of the circle  $ABC$ , be produced to meet the tangent at the other extremity of the diameter through  $A$  in  $D$ ,  $E$  respectively, then the  $\triangle AED$  is similar to  $\triangle ABC$ .

36. If a st. line be divided into two parts, the sq. on the st. line equals the sum of the rectangles contained by the st. line and the two parts.

37.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle.  $AB$ ,  $DC$  meet at  $E$  and  $BC$ ,  $AD$  meet at  $F$ . Show that the sq. on  $EF$  equals the sum of the sqs. on the tangents drawn from  $E$ ,  $F$  to the circle.

38. The st. line  $AB$  is divided at  $C$  so that  $AC = 3CB$ . Circles are described on  $AC$ ,  $CB$  as diameters and a common tangent meets  $AB$  produced at  $D$ . Show that  $BD$  equals the radius of the smaller circle.

39.  $DE$  is a diameter of a circle and  $A$  is any point on the circumference. The tangent at  $A$  meets the tangents at  $D$ ,  $E$  at  $B$ ,  $C$  respectively.  $BE$ ,  $CD$  meet at  $F$ . Show that  $AF$  is  $\parallel$  to  $BD$ .

40.  $TA$ ,  $TB$  are tangents to a circle of which  $C$  is the centre.  $AD$  is  $\perp BC$ . Show that  $TB : BC = BD : DA$ .

41.  $ABCD$  is a quadrilateral inscribed in a circle.  $BA$ ,  $CD$  produced meet at  $P$ , and  $AD$ ,  $BC$  produced meet at  $Q$ . Show that  $PC : PB = QA : QB$ .

42. Divide a given arc of a circle into two parts, so that the chords of these parts shall be to each other in the ratio of two given st. lines.

43. Describe a circle to pass through a given point and touch a given st. line and a given circle.

44.  $\triangle LMN$  is a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle$  with  $L$  the rt. $\angle$ . On the three sides equilateral  $\triangle$ s  $LEM$ ,  $MFN$ ,  $NDL$  are described outwardly.  $LG \perp MN$ . Prove that  $\triangle FGM = \triangle LEM$  and  $\triangle FGN = \triangle NDL$ .

45.  $L$  is the rt. $\angle$  of a rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle LMN$  in which  $LN = 2 LM$ . Also  $LX \perp MN$ . Prove that  $LX = \frac{2}{3} MN$ .

46. A st. line meets two intersecting circles in  $P$  and  $Q$ ,  $R$  and  $S$  and their common chord in  $O$ . Prove that  $OP$ ,  $OQ$ ,  $OR$ ,  $OS$ , taken in a certain order, are proportionals.

47.  $LMN$  is a semi-circle of which  $O$  is the centre, and  $OM \perp LN$ . A chord  $LDE$  cuts  $OM$  at  $D$ . Prove that  $LM$  is a tangent to the circle  $MDE$ .

48. The bisector of  $\angle F$  of  $\triangle FGH$  meets the base  $GH$  in  $E$  and the circumcircle in  $D$ . Prove that  $DG^2 = DE \cdot DF$ .

49.  $POQ$ ,  $ROS$  are two st. lines such that  $PO : OQ = 3 : 4$  and  $RO : OS = 2 : 5$ . Compare areas of  $\triangle$ s  $POR$ ,  $QOS$ ; and also areas of  $\triangle$ s  $POS$ ,  $QOR$ .

50. Trisect a given square by st. lines drawn  $\parallel$  to one of its diagonals.

51. Construct a  $\triangle$  having its base 8 cm., the other sides in the ratio of 3 to 2, and the vertical  $\angle = 75^\circ$ .

52. In two similar  $\triangle$ s, the parts lying within the  $\triangle$  of the right bisectors of corresponding sides have the same ratio as the corresponding sides of the  $\triangle$ .

53.  $KMN$ ,  $LMN$  are  $\triangle$ s on the same base and between the same  $\parallel$ s.  $KN$ ,  $LM$  cut at  $E$ . A line through  $E$ ,  $\parallel MN$ , meets  $KM$  in  $F$  and  $LN$  in  $G$ . Prove that  $FE = EG$ .

54. Construct a  $\triangle$  having given the vertical  $\angle$ , the ratio of the sides containing that  $\angle$ , and the altitude drawn to the base.

55. From a point **P** without a circle two secants **PFG**, **PED** are drawn, and **PQ** drawn  $\parallel$  **FD** meets **GE** produced at **Q**. Prove that **PQ** is a mean proportional between **QE**, **QG**.

56. **LD** bisects  $\angle L$  of  $\triangle LMN$  and meets **MN** at **D**. From **D** the line **DE**  $\parallel$  **LM** meets **LN** at **E**, and **DF**  $\parallel$  **LN** meets **LM** at **F**. Prove that  $FM : EN = LM^2 : LN^2$ .

57.  $\triangle LMN$  is a  $\triangle$   $\angle$  rt.-d at **L**. **LD**  $\perp$  **MN** and meets a line drawn from **M**  $\perp$  **LM** at **E**. Prove that  $\triangle LMD$  is a mean proportional between  $\triangle$ s **LDN**, **MDE**.

58. Two circles touch externally at **D** and **PQ** is a common tangent. **PD** and **QD** produced meet the circumferences at **L**, **M** respectively. Show that **PM** and **QL** are diameters of the circles.

59. The common tangent to two circles which intersect subtends supplementary  $\angle$ s at the points of intersection.

60. Two circles intersect at **Q** and **R**, and **ST** is a common tangent. Show that the circles described about  $\triangle$ s **STR**, **STQ** are equal.

61. A st. line **DEF** is drawn from **D** the extremity of a diameter of a circle cutting the circumference at **E** and a fixed st. line  $\perp$  to the diameter at **F**. Show that the rect. **DE**.**DF** is constant for all positions of **DEF**.

62. A chord **LM** of a circle is produced to **E** such that **ME** is one-third of **LM**; a tangent **EP** is drawn to the circle and produced to **D** such that **PD** = **EP**. Prove that  $\triangle ELD$  is isosceles.

63. Draw a st. line to touch one circle and to cut another, the chord cut off being equal to a given st. line.

64. Two equal circles are placed so that the transverse common tangent is equal to the radius. Show that the tangent from the centre of one circle to the other equals the diameter of each circle.

65. Construct a  $\triangle$  having its medians respectively equal to three given st. lines.

66. Construct a  $\triangle$  given one side and the lengths of the medians drawn from the ends of that side.

67. Construct a  $\triangle$  given one side, the median drawn to the middle point of that side, and a median drawn from one end of that side.

68. Construct a  $\triangle$  having  $\angle A = 20^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 90^\circ$ , and  $c - a = 4$  cm.

69. Construct a  $\triangle$  having  $\angle C = 90^\circ$ ,  $b = 6$  cm., and  $c - a = 3.5$  cm.

70. Construct a  $\triangle$  having  $a = 7$  cm.,  $c - b = 3$  cm., and  $\angle C - \angle B = 28^\circ$ .

71. If a st. line be drawn in any direction from one vertex of a ||gm, the  $\perp$  to it from the opposite vertex equals the sum or difference of the  $\perp$ s to it from the two remaining vertices.

72.  $PQ$  is a chord of a circle  $\perp$  to the diameter  $LM$ , and  $E$  is any point in  $LM$ . If  $PE$ ,  $QE$  meet the circumference in  $S$ ,  $R$  respectively, show that  $PS = QR$ ; and that  $RS \perp LM$ .

73.  $P$  is any point in a diameter  $LM$  of a circle, and  $QR$  is a chord  $\parallel LM$ . Prove that  $PQ^2 + PR^2 = PL^2 + PM^2$ .

74. On the hypotenuse  $EF$  of the rt.- $\angle$  d  $\triangle DEF$  a  $\triangle GEF$  is described outwardly having  $\angle GEF = \angle DEF$  and  $\angle GFE$  a rt.  $\angle$ . Prove that  $\triangle GFE : \triangle DEF = GE : ED$ .

75. Two quadrilaterals whose diagonals intersect at equal  $\angle$ s are to one another in the ratio of the rectangles contained by the diagonals.

76. **P** is any point in the side **LM** of a  $\triangle LMN$ . The st. line **MQ**,  $\parallel PN$ , meets **LN** produced at **Q**; and **X, Y** are points in **LM, LQ** respectively, such that  $LX^2 = LP \cdot LM$  and  $LY^2 = LN \cdot LQ$ . Prove that  $\triangle LXY = \triangle LMN$ .

77. **EFP, EFQ** are circles and **PFQ** is a st. line. **ER** is a diameter of circle **EFP** and **ES** a diameter of **EFQ**. Prove  $\triangle EPR : \triangle EQS$  as the squares on the radii of the circles.

78. If **P** is the point of intersection of an external common tangent **PQR** to two circles with the line of centres, prove that **PQ : PR** as the radii of the circles. Also, if **PCDEF** is a secant, prove that **PC : PE = PD : PF**

79. A point **E** is taken within a quadrilateral **FGHK** such that  $\angle EFK = \angle GFH$  and  $\angle EKF = \angle GHF$ . **GE** is joined. Prove  $\triangle FEG \parallel\!\!| \triangle FHK$ .

80. Through a given point within a circle, draw a chord that is divided at the point in a given ratio

81. From **P**, a point on the circumference of a circle, tangents **PE, PF** are drawn to an inner concentric circle. **GEFH** is a chord, and **PE** meets the circumference at **Q**. Prove  $\triangle$ s **PGF, PEH, GEQ** similar; also show that  $GQ^2 : GP^2 = GE : GF$ .

82. **L** is the vertex of an isosceles  $\triangle LMN$  inscribed in a circle, **LRS** is a st. line which cuts the base in **R** and meets the circle in **S**. Prove that  $SL \cdot RL = LM^2$ .

83. **PQR** is a rt.- $\angle$ d  $\triangle$  with **P** the rt.  $\angle$ . **PD**  $\perp$  **QR**; **DM**  $\perp$  **PQ** and **DN**  $\perp$  **PR**. Prove that  $\angle QMR = \angle QNR$ .

84. **DEF** is an isosceles  $\triangle$  with  $\angle D = 120^\circ$ . Show that if **EF** be trisected at **G** and **H**, the  $\triangle DGH$  is equilateral.

85. **AS** and **AT**, **BP** and **BQ** are tangents from two points **A** and **B** to a circle. **C, D, E, F** are the middle points of **AS, AT, BP, BQ** respectively. Prove that **CD, EF**, produced if necessary, meet on the right bisector of **AB**. (*Let O be the centre of the circle; L and M the points where OA, OB cut the chords of contact. Prove A, L, M, B concyclic, etc.*)

86. If from the middle point of an arc two st. lines be drawn cutting the chord of the arc and the circumference, the four points of intersection are concyclic.

87. If a st. line be divided at two given points, find a third point in the line, such that its distances from the ends of the line may be proportional to its distances from the two given points.

88. Prove geometrically that the arithmetic mean between two given st. lines is greater than the geometric mean between the two st. lines.

89. A square is inscribed in a rt.-angled triangle, one side of the square coinciding with the hypotenuse: prove that the area of the square is equal to the rectangle contained by the extreme segments of the hypotenuse.

90. Any regular polygon inscribed in a circle is the geometric mean between the inscribed and circumscribed regular polygons of half the number of sides.

91. The diagonal and the diagonals of the complements of the parallelograms about the diagonal of a parallelogram are concurrent.

92. Develop the formula for the area of a  $\triangle$ ,  $\sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$  where  $2s = a + b + c$  and  $a, b, c$  are the sides.

*Solution of 92.* In  $\triangle ABC$ , draw  $AX \perp BC$ , and let  $AX = h$ ,  $BX = x$ . Then  $CX = a - x$ .

$$\text{Area of } \triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2} a h.$$

$$h^2 = b^2 - (a - x)^2 = c^2 - x^2,$$

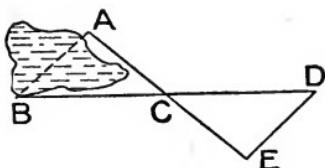
$$\therefore x = \frac{a^2 - b^2 + c^2}{2a}.$$

$$h^2 = c^2 - \frac{(a^2 - b^2 + c^2)^2}{4a^2}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} 4a^2 h^2 &= 4a^2 c^2 - (a^2 - b^2 + c^2)^2 \\ &= (2ac + a^2 - b^2 + c^2)(2ac - a^2 + b^2 - c^2) \\ &= \{(a + c)^2 - b^2\} \{b^2 - (a - c)^2\} \\ &= (a + b + c)(a - b + c)(a + b - c)(b - a + c) \\ &= 2s(2s - 2b)(2s - 2c)(2s - 2a). \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{4} a^2 h^2 = s(s - a)(s - b)(s - c),$$

$$\text{And } \frac{1}{2} ah = \sqrt{s(s - a)(s - b)(s - c)}.$$

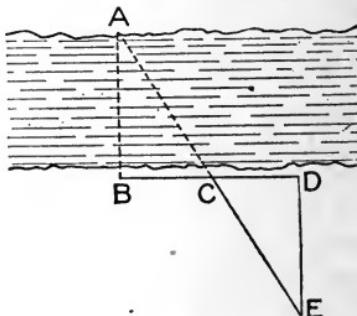


93. Show from the diagram how the distance between two points, A, B at opposite sides of a pond may be found by measurements on land.

94. Show from the diagram how the breadth of a river may be found by measurements made on one side of it.

95. Given a st. line AB, construct a continuation of it CD, AB and CD being separated by an obstacle.

96. AB, CD are two lines which would meet off the paper. Draw a st. line which would pass through the point of intersection of AB, CD, and bisect the  $\angle$  between them.



## INDEX TO DEFINITIONS

---

	<small>PAGE</small>
<b>Acute angle</b> :—An $\angle$ which is $<$ a rt. $\angle$ .....	10
<b>Acute-angled triangle</b> :—A $\triangle$ which has three acute $\angle$ s. ....	27
<b>Adjacent angles</b> :—Two $\angle$ s which have the same vertex, an arm common, and the remaining arms on opposite sides of the common arm.....	11
<b>Altitude of a triangle</b> :—The length of the $\perp$ from any vertex of the $\triangle$ to the opposite side.....	27
<b>Angle</b> :—The amount of rotation made by a st. line when it revolves about a fixed point in itself from one position to another.....	8
<b>Antecedent</b> :—The first term in a ratio .....	213
<b>Arc of a circle</b> :—A part of the circumference .....	17
<b>Axiom</b> :—A statement that is self-evident, or assumed.....	3
<b>Axis of symmetry</b> :—The line about which a symmetrical figure can be folded so that the parts on one side will exactly fit the corresponding parts on the other side.....	21
<b>Centroid</b> :—The point where the medians of a $\triangle$ intersect one another.....	69
<b>Chord of a circle</b> :—The st. line joining two points on the circumference.....	17
<b>Chord of contact</b> :—The st. line joining the points of contact of two tangents.....	174
<b>Circle</b> :—The locus of the points that are at a fixed distance from a fixed point .....	17, 141
(The name circle is also used for the area inclosed by the circumference).	
<b>Circumcentre</b> :—The centre of the circumscribed circle of a $\triangle$ ....	144
<b>Circumference</b> :—Same as circle .....	17
<b>Circumscribed circle</b> :—A circle which passes through all the vertices of a rectilineal figure.....	143
<b>Coincide</b> :—Magnitudes which fill exactly the same space are said to coincide with each other.....	4
<b>Commensurable magnitudes</b> :—Magnitudes which have a common measure.....	214
<b>Complementary angles</b> :—Two $\angle$ s of which the sum is one rt. $\angle$ . 13	
<b>Concyclic points</b> :—Points through which a circle may be described	143
<b>Congruent figures</b> :—Figures equal in all respects, so that one may be made to fit the other exactly.....	15
<b>Consequent</b> :—The second term of a ratio.....	213
<b>Converse propositions</b> :—Two propositions of which the hypothesis of each is the conclusion of the other.....	41

<b>Cyclic quadrilateral</b> :—A quadrilateral of which all the vertices are on the circumference of the same circle.....	144
<b>Diagonal</b> :—A st. line joining opposite vertices of a rectilineal figure.....	17
<b>Diameter of a circle</b> :—A chord passing through the centre.....	17
<b>Equilateral triangle</b> :—A $\triangle$ having three equal sides.....	19
<b>Escribed circle of a triangle</b> :—A circle which is touched by one side of a $\triangle$ and by the other two sides produced.....	187
<b>External segments of a line</b> :—The distances from the two ends of a line to a point taken in the line produced.....	217
<b>Figure</b> :—Any combination of points, lines, surfaces and solids...	2
<b>Geometric mean</b> :—The second of three terms that are in continued proportion .....	214
<b>Hypotenuse</b> :—The side opposite the rt. $\angle$ in a rt.- $\angle$ d $\triangle$ .....	27
<b>Hypothesis</b> :—The part of a proposition in which the conditions that are supposed to exist are stated.....	5
<b>Incommensurable magnitudes</b> :—Magnitudes that have no common measure however small .....	214
<b>Indirect method of demonstration</b> :—Method of proof that begins by assuming that the proposition to be proved is not true.....	41
<b>Inscribed Circle</b> :—A circle that is within a closed, rectilineal figure, and which is touched by each side of the figure.....	187
<b>Internal segments of a line</b> :—The distances from the ends of a line to a point in the line .....	217
<b>Isosceles triangle</b> :—A $\triangle$ having two equal sides.....	19
<b>Line</b> :—That which has length, but neither breadth nor thickness..	1
<b>Locus</b> :—A figure consisting of a line (or lines) which contains all the points that satisfy a given condition, and no others.....	77
<small>(See also page 78).</small>	
<b>Major arc of a circle</b> :—An arc that is greater than half the circumference.....	153
<b>Major segment of a circle</b> :—A segment of which the arc is a major arc.....	153
<b>Means of a proportion</b> :—The second and third of four magnitudes that are in proportion .....	214
<b>Mean proportional</b> :—The second of three magnitudes that are in continued proportion .....	214
<b>Median</b> :—A st. line drawn from any vertex of a $\triangle$ to the middle point of the opposite side.....	30
<b>Minor arc of a circle</b> :—An arc that is less than half the circumference .....	153

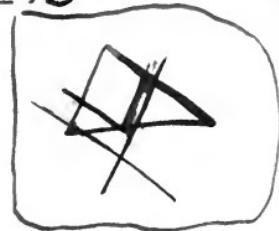
	PAGE
<b>Minor segment of a circle</b> :—A segment of which the arc is a minor arc .....	153
<b>Obtuse angle</b> :—An $\angle$ which is $>$ a rt. $\angle$ .....	10
<b>Obtuse-angled triangle</b> :—A $\triangle$ one $\angle$ of which is an obtuse $\angle$ ..	27
<b>Parallel straight lines</b> :—St. lines in the same plane which do not meet when produced for any finite distance in either direction.	35
<b>Parallelogram</b> :—A quadrilateral that has both pairs of opposite sides $\parallel$ to each other .....	35
<b>Perpendicular</b> :—Each arm of a rt. $\angle$ is said to be $\perp$ to the other arm. ....	10
<b>Plane surface</b> :—A surface such that if any two points on it be joined by a st. line the joining line lies wholly on the surface..	2
<b>Point</b> :—That which has position but no size .....	1
<b>Point of contact</b> :—The common point of a tangent and circle....	169
<b>Polygon</b> :—A figure bounded by more than four st. lines. Also sometimes used for a figure bounded by any number of st. lines.	68
<b>Problem</b> :—The statement of a construction to be made.....	4
<b>Projection of the point on the line</b> :—The foot of the $\perp$ from the point to the line .....	128
<b>Projection of the line on the line</b> :—The intercept on the second line between the projections of the two ends of the first line on the second .....	129
<b>Proportion</b> :—The equality of ratios.....	213
<b>Proposition</b> :—That which is stated or affirmed for discussion .....	4
<b>Quadrilateral</b> :—A closed figure formed by four st. lines....	17
<b>Radius</b> :—A st. line drawn from the centre of a circle to the circumference .....	17
<b>Ratio</b> :—The measure of one magnitude when another magnitude of the same kind is taken as the unit.....	213
<b>Rectangle</b> :—A   gm of which the $\angle$ s are rt. $\angle$ s.....	68
<b>Rectilineal figure</b> :—A figure formed by st. lines .....	15
<b>Reflex angle</b> :—An $\angle$ which is $>$ two rt. $\angle$ s, but $<$ four rt. $\angle$ s..	154
<b>Regular polygon</b> :—A polygon in which all the sides are equal to each other, and all the $\angle$ s are equal to each other.....	68
<b>Rhombus</b> :—A quadrilateral having its four sides equal to each other	17
<b>Right angle</b> :—An $\angle$ which is half of a st. $\angle$ .....	10
<b>Right-angled triangle</b> :—A $\triangle$ one $\angle$ of which is a rt. $\angle$ .....	27
<b>Right bisector</b> :—A st. line which bisects a st. line of given length at rt. $\angle$ s.....	28
<b>Scalene triangle</b> :—A $\triangle$ having no two of its sides equal to each other .....	19

	PAGE
<b>Secant of a circle</b> :—A st. line drawn from a point without to cut a circle.....	169
<b>Sector of a circle</b> :—A figure bounded by two radii of a circle and either of the arcs intercepted by these radii .....	155
<b>Segment of a circle</b> :—A figure bounded by an arc of a circle and the chord which joins the ends of the arc.....	153
<b>Similar polygons</b> :—Two polygons of the same number of sides which have the $\angle$ s of one taken in order around the figure respectively equal to the $\angle$ s of the other in order, and have also the corresponding sides in proportion .....	274
<b>Similar segments of circles</b> :—Segments which contain equal $\angle$ s.	263
<b>Similar triangles</b> :—Two $\triangle$ s which have the three $\angle$ s of one respectively equal to the three $\angle$ s of the other .....	158
<b>Solid</b> :—That which has length, breadth and thickness.....	2
<b>Square</b> :—A rectangle of which all the sides are equal to each other.	68
<b>Straight angle</b> :—Half of a complete revolution made by a st. line revolving about a point in itself.....	9
<b>Straight lines</b> :—Lines which cannot have any two points of one coincide with two points of the other without the lines coinciding altogether.....	1
<b>Subtend</b> :—A line drawn from a point in one arm of an $\angle$ to a point in the other arm subtends the $\angle$ .....	17
<b>Supplementary angles</b> :—Two $\angle$ s of which the sum is two rt. $\angle$ s.	13
<b>Surface</b> :—That which has length and breadth but no thickness...	2
<b>Symmetrical figure</b> :—A figure which can be folded along a st. line so that the parts on one side exactly fit the corresponding parts on the other side.....	20
<b>Tangent to a circle</b> :—A st. line which, however far it may be produced, has one point on the circumference of a circle and all other points without the circle.....	169
<b>Theorem</b> :—The statement of a truth to be proved.....	4
<b>Touch</b> —A tangent is said to touch a circle.....	169
Two circles which meet each other at one point and only one point are said to touch each other.....	196
<b>Transversal</b> —A st. line which cuts two, or more, other st. lines..	35
<b>Triangle</b> :—A figure formed by three st. lines which intersect one another .....	15
<b>Vertex of an angle</b> :—The point from which the two arms of the $\angle$ are drawn .....	8





YB 17296



≡ congruence 15

L angle

6 6  
9 9

M306170

QA 453  
M3

78

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

